HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE AVENGER PLATOON

ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 44-117-22-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 4 June 2001

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE AVENGER PLATOON

TABLE OF CONTENTS

*This publication supersedes ARTEP 44-117-21-MTP, 18 JUNE 1992.

PREFACE

1. The purpose of this MTP is to provide you, the Avenger Platoon leader, with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to assist leaders in training their units. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP is in accordance with United States Army training and tactical doctrine. The MTP contains those tasks which support the unit mission outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use their higher headquarters METL and training guidance to identify which tasks in the MTP must be emphasized. Task standards in the MTP are the Army standards for executing those tasks.

2. The intended audience for this MTP includes the leaders, trainers, and observers/controllers for the Avenger platoons organized under TOEs 44-117, 44-137, 44-147, and 44-178 in the heavy, light, and special divisions and similar Avenger platoons in the heavy, light, and special divisions in National Guard units.

3. The proponent for this publication is Headquarters, TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 to: Commandant, US Army Air Defense Artillery School, ATTN: ATSA-DT-WF, Fort Bliss, TX 79916-3802.

4. Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. General. This MTP provides you with a training and evaluation program. It provides guidance on how to train, as well as the key missions to train. Chapter 1 of FM 25-100 contains the specific details to "battle focus" a training program. The specific details of your training program depend on many factors, including—

a. Training directives and guidance established by your chain of command.

b. Training directives of your unit.

c. Training resources and areas available.

d. Your unit METL.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program. The individual and collective training shown below supports this MTP.

a. Battery MTP. The battery commander uses this MTP to plan and conduct training and evaluations for his battery.

b. Platoon MTP. The platoon leaders use this MTP to plan and conduct training for their platoons.

c. Drills. Trainers use drills to train those collective tasks which fit drill criteria.

d. Non-drill collective tasks.

e. Soldier's manual tasks for the appropriate MOS tasks and skill levels.

Note: Figure 1-1 shows platoon MTP echelon relationships.

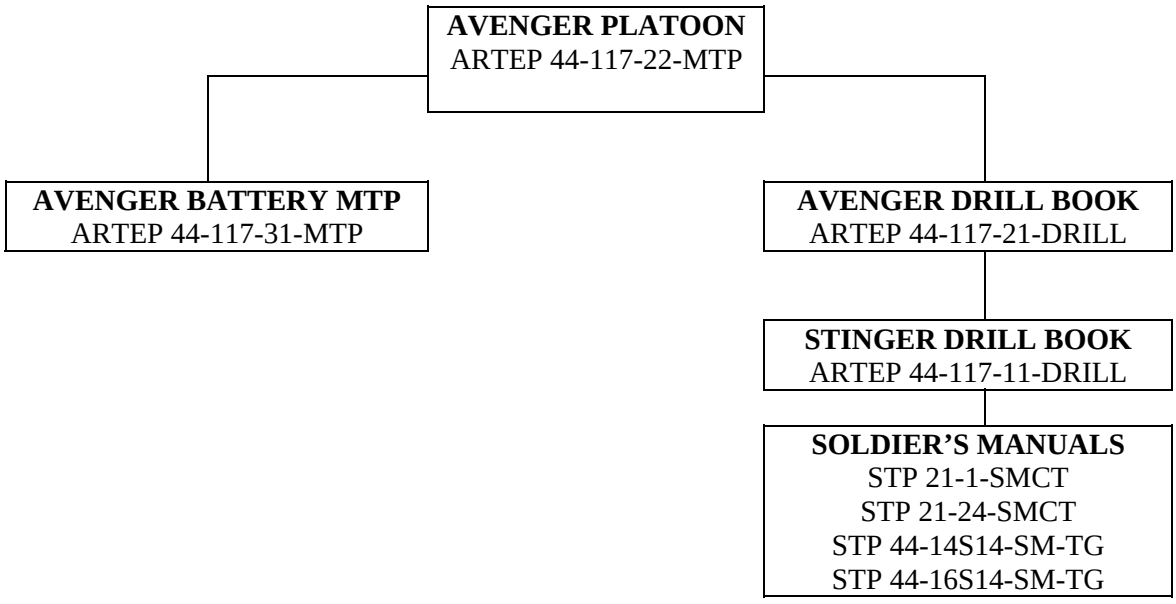

Figure 1-1. Platoon MTP Echelon Relationships.

1-3. Contents. This MTP contains six chapters.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training. This chapter provides a foundation for the other chapters and explains their use.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. This chapter shows the relationship between missions and collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. This chapter provides the mission orientation for training. The mission outlines present a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical wartime missions and subordinate tasks inherent to those missions.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. This chapter consists of seven STXs and one FTX. The STXs and FTX provide training information and a scenario to give you a flexible, preconstructed vehicle for training and for sustaining proficiency of key missions. They may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation designed to have the platoon execute the mission in a tactical setting using all training simulators available. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of your platoon.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. This chapter provides the training criteria for all of the collective tasks that the platoon must master to perform its critical wartime missions. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the platoon. Each T&EO constitutes a part of one or more critical missions and, in various combinations, makes up larger training vehicles such as the STXs and FTX in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. This chapter provides instructions for the development of an external evaluation of your platoon and includes suggested rating forms.

1-4. Missions and Tasks. The missions are composed of major activities that the unit and you, their leader and trainer, must do to accomplish that mission. The missions also include the things that sections and individual soldiers must do.

Mission

Provide Air Defense for Forward Combat Elements, Areas, or Installations against UAV-RPV and Fixed- or Rotary-wing Aircraft.

Capabilities

- A day or night, shoot-on-the move capability, with the Avenger weapon system.
- Engagement of low-altitude hostile aircraft, with the Stinger missile system in the MANPADS configuration.
- A ground defense capability with the M3P .50-caliber machine gun when not required in the air defense mode.

a. These missions and tasks require training. Platoon tasks may be trained individually (one at a time) or jointly (with others). In either case, orient them on the training criteria in the T&EOs and drills. STXs contain several collective tasks as shown in Chapter 2. External evaluations designed by your higher headquarters use the FTX in Chapter 4 to evaluate your platoon's ability to perform missions under stress in a realistic environment.

b. Squad and team tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad or team leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book. (Detailed information on drill training is in ARTEPs 44-117-11-Drill and 44-117-21-Drill).

c. Leader tasks that support the platoon missions are trained through STPs and OFS training, battle simulations, and execution of this platoon's missions.

d. Soldiers master individual tasks through training to the standards outlined in soldier's manuals. Listed at the end of each T&EO in Chapter 5 are the soldier's manual tasks that support collective task training. You must determine those key individual tasks that all members of your unit must master and conduct sustainment training to maintain their proficiency level.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP supports the concept of "Training the Force" as detailed in FM 25-100. For further information, see Chapter 1 of this manual.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of CATS. The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard.

a. The unit's training strategies central to CATS provide the platoon leader with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy contained in this MTP is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the platoon to standard by listing required training events, critical gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. You, the platoon leader, select from this MTP those tasks

required to train your METL. The training strategies provided in this MTP provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy is comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows your platoon to train to standard. The elements of your platoon training strategy are—

(1) Maneuver strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in your platoon and depict those resources which are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is built around the weapon systems found in your platoon and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the STRAC manual or appropriate field manual.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, and run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for an FTX and an STX is identified as a critical gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers or unit(s) to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the platoon's METL, and the platoon leader's assessment of his unit's training status, will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the platoon training plan, the platoon leader will identify the training tasks from the MTP required to train your METL. CATS training strategies are found in the appendixes of platoon MTPs.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP eases the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101.

a. You, the platoon leader, assign the missions and supporting tasks for which you intend to develop training. Your decision is based on the battery commander's training guidance. You must plan and execute platoon training in support of this guidance.

b. Review the training plan in Chapter 3 to determine whether the FTX and STXs provided will support or can be modified to support your battery commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a listing of all critical collective tasks which your platoon must master to perform its missions.

c. Prioritize the tasks that need training. You will never have time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrate training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The battery commander is the approving authority for training objectives and is also responsible for preparing and submitting training schedules to the unit higher commander for approval and placement on the unit training schedule.

f. The platoon leader must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The platoon leader must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection (Safety). Force protection (safety and fratricide) is an issue that every leader must consider in all aspects of training and evaluation.

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk management to ensure that unnecessary risks are eliminated and that realistic training can be performed. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the platoon leader's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations and SASO. Safety begins with readiness which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are—

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including required equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Proper fluid replacement (hydration) is one of the most essential elements in heat injury prevention. Of particular note is the fact that the revised maximum hourly fluid intake should NOT exceed 1.5 quarts and the revised maximum daily fluid intake should not exceed 12 quarts. The newly revised fluid replacement chart (Table 1-1) describes the amounts of fluid replacement and work/rest cycles for acclimatized soldiers undergoing training. Table 1-2 explains the work guidelines.

Table 1-1. Fluid Replacement Guidelines for Warm Weather Training.

Heat Category	WBGT Index, ^{o}F	Easy Work		Moderate Work		Hard Work	
		Work/Rest	Water Intake, Qt/Hr	Work/Rest	Water Intake, Qt/Hr	Work/Rest	Water Intake, Qt/Hr
1	78-81.9	NL	½	NL	¾	40/20 min	¾
2 (Green)	82-84.9	NL	½	50/10 min	¾	30/30 min	1
3 (Yellow)	85-87.9	NL	¾	40/20 min	¾	30/30 min	1
4 (Red)	88-89.9	NL	¾	30/30 min	¾	20/40 min	1
5 (Black)	> 90	50/10 min	1	20/40 min	1	10/50 min	1

Notes:

- Applies to average acclimated soldier wearing BDU, hot weather.
- The work: rest times and fluid replacement volumes will sustain performance and hydration for at least 4 hours of work in the specified heat category. Individual water needs will vary $\pm$ ¼ quart/hour. NL = no limit to work time per hour.
- Rest means minimal physical activity (sitting or standing), accomplished in shade if possible.
- **CAUTION: Hourly fluid intake should not exceed 1½ quarts.**
- **Daily fluid intake should not exceed 12 quarts.**
- Wearing body armor, add $5^{o}F$ to WBGT index.
- Wearing MOPP overgarment, add $10^{o}F$ to WBGT index.

Table 1-2. Workload Guidelines.

Easy Work	Moderate Work	Hard Work
• Walking hard surface at 2.5 mph, = 30 lb load • Weapon maintenance • Manual of arms • Marksmanship training • Drill and ceremony	• Walking hard surface at 3.5 mph, < 40 lb load • Walking loose sand at 2.5 mph, no load • Calisthenics • Patrolling • Individual movement techniques; i.e., low crawl, high crawl • Defensive position construction • Field assaults	• Walking hard surface at 3.5 mph, = 40 lb load • Walking loose sand at 2.5 mph with load

c. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists platoon leaders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

d. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include—

(1) Platoon leader and platoon sergeant.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.

(b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by subordinate leaders.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(3) Individual soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member to implement safety performance measures.

(e) Modify own risk behavior.

e. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outline in FM 100-14. The five steps are—

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-2) is the tool for assessing hazards.

(3) Develop controls and make risk decision. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs, and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise and evaluate. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow-up and after action. Develop the lessons learned.

Military Decision Making Process	**Step 1 Identify Hazards**	**Step 2 Assess Hazards**	**Step 3 Develop Controls and Make Risk Decision**	**Step 4 Implement Controls**	**Step 5 Supervise and Evaluate**
Mission Receipt	X				
Mission Analysis	X	X	X		
COA Development	X	X	X		
COA Analysis	X	X	X		
COA Comparison			X		
Orders Production			X		
COA Approval				X	
Rehearsal[1]	X	X	X	X	X
Execution and Assessment[1]	X	X	X	X	X
[1]All boxes are marked to emphasize the continued use of the risk management process throughout the mission.					

Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix.

f. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(1) Direct fire control plan failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land navigation failures. This results when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and/or optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting communications failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Unit experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit leadership.

(2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Oversupervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environment degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrixes.

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief chain of command. Brief chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

ENVIRONMENTAL AREA	RATING:					
UNIT OPERATIONS	**RISK IMPACT**					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Environmental Risk Assessment Worksheet

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	**Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems**	**Assembly area activities**	**Field maintenance of equipment**	**Garrison maintenance of equipment**	**Risk rating**
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

CATEGORY	RANGE	ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE	DECISION MAKER
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Commander
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM Commander

Risk Categories

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix.

1-10. NBC. Realistic training requires organizations to train the way they will fight or support on the battlefield. This includes combat and combat support under all NBC conditions. On a task-by-task basis, your unit must attain proficiency in each collective task at the highest MOPP possible. As your unit becomes more proficient on each collective task, you as a trainer must inject and insist on dedicated training at the highest MOPP.

1-11. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally

conducted by a headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated (see Chapter 6, External Evaluation).

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly, and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercise (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique which will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-12. Feedback. We have provided a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier for you to send your recommendations and comments to us. Please complete and mail the questionnaire to ensure that we know what improvements we need to make. In case of a need for an immediate change, use the USAADASCH DOTTD home page, http://147.71.210.21/.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIX

2-1. General. The training matrix in this chapter will help you plan your unit's training. It gives you an organized set of relationships to make your job easier.

2-2. Training Matrix (Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix). This matrix (Table 2-1) displays the relationship between the STXs and their supporting collective tasks. Use it to plan nondrill collective task training to support STX training. To use this matrix, determine which STX you plan to train and locate its representative number across the top of the columns. Now look down the column. An "X" in the column identifies each collective task and number supporting the STX. Prioritize collective tasks in the order you want to train them.

Table 2-1. Training Matrix.

EXERCISE NUMBER	EXERCISE TITLE
STX 44-4-E0001	PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL
STX 44-3-E0002	PROVIDE ADA FOR STATIC ASSET
STX 44-3-E0003	PROVIDE ADA FOR A MOVEMENT TO CONTACT
STX 44-3-E0004	PROVIDE ADA DURING BREACHING
STX 44-3-E0005	PROVIDE ADA FOR A CONVOY (INTEGRATED)
STX 44-3-E0006	PROVIDE ADA FOR A RIVER CROSSING
STX 44-3-E0007	CONDUCT SUSTAINING OPERATIONS

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEM, COLLECTIVE TASK NUMBER, AND TITLE	STX E0001	STX E0002	STX E0003	STX E0004	STX E0005	STX E0006	STX E0007
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE							
44-4-2261.44-A30H DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	X	X	X	X	X	X	
19-3-3105.44-A30H PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT		X	X				
DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER							
44-1-9046.44-A30H CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
44-3-1204.44-A30H CONDUCT AVENGER SLING-LOAD		X				X	X
44-3-1205.44-A30H CONDUCT AVENGER RIGGING FOR AIRDROP			X				
55-2-C324.44-A30H CONDUCT A CONVOY	X	X	X	X	X		X

Table 2-1. Training Matrix (continued).

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEM, COLLECTIVE TASK NUMBER, AND TITLE	STX E0001	STX E0002	STX E0003	STX E0004	STX E0005	STX E0006	STX E0007
PROTECT THE FORCE							
71-3-C232.44-A30H MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	X	X				X	X
03-3-C226.44-A30H CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA			X		X		
03-3-C205.44-A30H PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	X	X					
03-3-C201.44-A30H PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	X		X	X	X	X	
44-1-C220.44-A30H USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	X	X	X	X		X	X
03-3-C209.44-A30H REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS			X	X	X	X	
03-3-C223.44-A30H RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK		X		X			X
03-3-C202.44-A30H PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK			X				
03-3-C206.44-A30H PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK				X			
03-3-C208.44-A30H CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA				X			
03-3-C222.44-A30H RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK				X			
03-3-C203.44-A30H RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK			X				
19-3-2205.44-A30H CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	X	X	X	X		X	X
03-3-C225.44-A30H CONDUCT CHEMICAL RECONNAISSANCE			X				
03-3-C224.44-A30H CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION		X	X	X			X
44-1-3534.44-A30H PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	X	X	X	X	X	X	
44-1-5137.44-A30H COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE	X			X	X	X	
44-2-7008.44-A30H CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	X	X	X	X	X	X	
44-1-C221.44-A30H TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	X		X	X	X	X	

Table 2-1. Training Matrix (continued).

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEM, COLLECTIVE TASK NUMBER, AND TITLE	STX E0001	STX E0002	STX E0003	STX E0004	STX E0005	STX E0006	STX E0007
PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT							
08-2-R315.44-A30H PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS							X
43-2-C322.44-A30H PERFORM UNIT LEVEL MAINTENANCE		X					X
44-4-2282.44-A30H CONDUCT LOGPAC ACTIVITIES	X	X					X
55-2-C325.44-A30H RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING-LOAD RESUPPLY		X	X	X			X
08-2-C316.44-A30H TRANSPORT CASUALTIES		X	X			X	X
08-2-0003.44-A30H TREAT CASUALTIES		X	X			X	X
19-3-3106.44-A30H HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR		X	X				
08-2-R303.44-A30H CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X			X
EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL							
11-5-1102.44-A30H INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE-CHANNEL GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINCGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	X	X			X		
11-5-0202.44-A30H OPERATE/MAINTAIN/ TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	X						
11-5-0201.44A30H OPERATE/MAINTAIN/ TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	X						
11-2-C302.44-A30H ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	X		X			X	
44-1-2187.44-A30H PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
71-2-C326.44-A30H PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 2-1. Training Matrix (continued).

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEM, COLLECTIVE TASK NUMBER, AND TITLE	STX E0001	STX E0002	STX E0003	STX E0004	STX E0005	STX E0006	STX E0007
EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL (continued)							
44-2-2294.44-A30H CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
44-4-5143.44-A30H ADJUST AIR DEFENSE COVERAGE (SHORAD)	X		X				
44-1-1045.44-A30H SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	X	X	X				X
44-4-2160.44-A30H ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	X	X	X	X		X	X
44-5-003.44-A30H DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
44-5-2190.44-A30H ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

CHAPTER 3

MISSION OUTLINE

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks. This outline provides the trainer a diagram of the unit missions and tasks, and a sample FTX and STX that support them.

3-2. Mission Outline. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its mission. The mission outline, Figure 3-1, provides the platoon leader with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

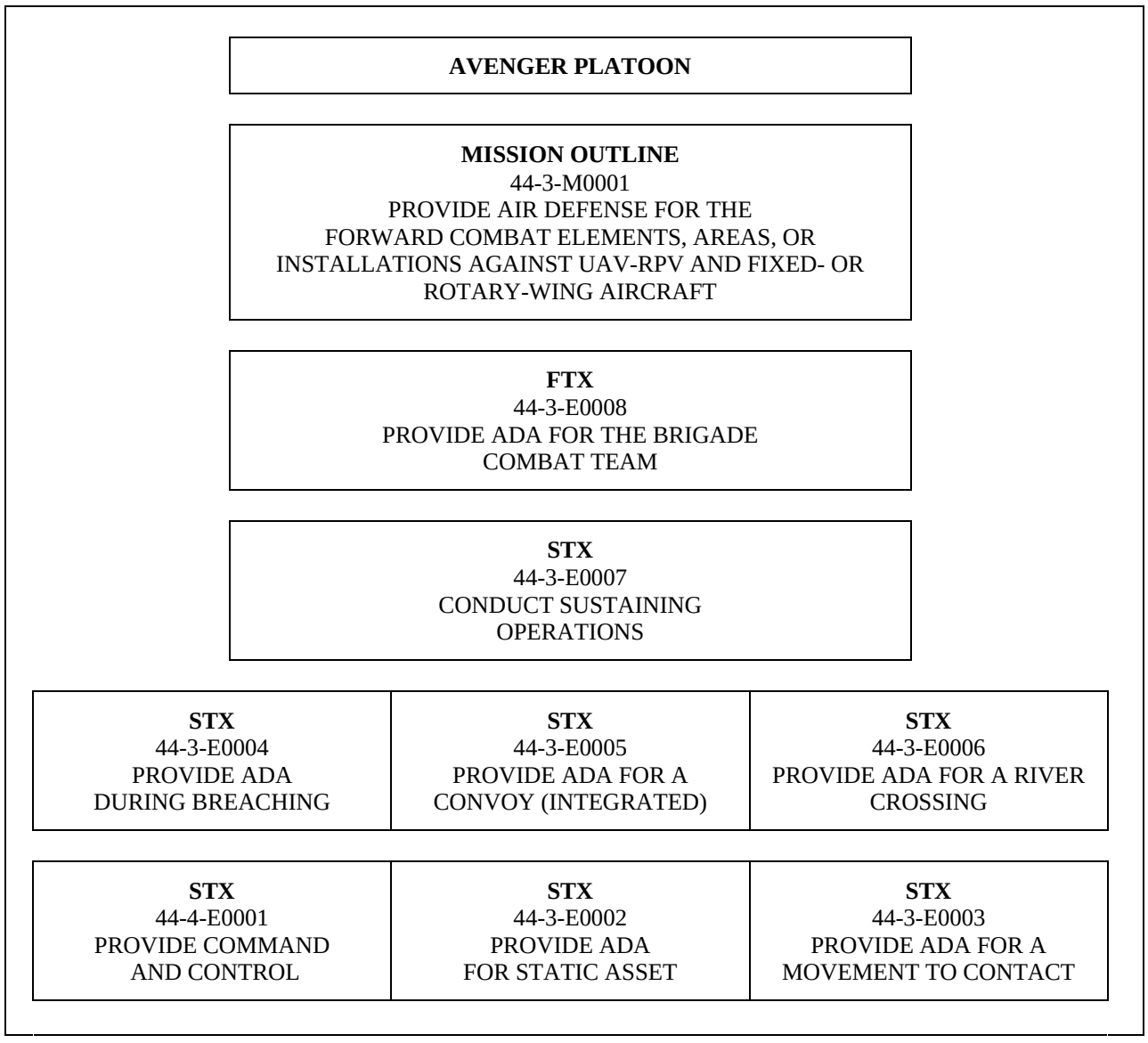

Figure 3-1. Sample Mission Outline 44-3-M0001.

3-3. Sample Training Exercises. Sample training exercises are numbered for identification and for Armywide automation of MTP production. (See Table 3-1.)

Table 3-1. How to Number Training Exercises and Missions.

STEP	ACTION	EXAMPLE
1.	Assign the proponent identification number to the first two digits.	The ADA School will use "44."
2.	Assign the echelon identification number to the third digit.	1- Battalion 2- Battery 3- Platoon 4- Squad, Section 5- Crew, Team
3.	Assign the exercise identification number to the last five digits. • Begin with the letter "E" to identify the number as being an exercise, or the letter "M" to identify a mission. • Followed by a four-digit sequential number.	Exercise identification numbers range from E0001-E9999.

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

4-1. General. Use training exercises to train and practice performance of collective tasks. There are two types of exercises in this MTP: STX and FTX. We designed these to assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating your unit's mission proficiency. This MTP includes seven STXs and one FTX designed to provide a basic plan to achieve proficiency in your basic missions. Table 4-1 lists these exercises by number, title, and page number. You may develop additional STXs and FTXs as necessary to train identified training needs using the same outlines in this chapter.

4-2. STX. The STX provides information for training smaller component tasks of a mission. The STX does the following important functions:

a. Provides repetitive training on bite-size chunks of missions.

b. Allows trainers to zero in on identified weaknesses.

c. Allows the unit to practice the selected critical parts of a mission before practicing the entire mission.

d. Saves time by providing a majority of the information you need to develop a vehicle for training.

e. Includes personnel and equipment safety procedures to support effective training of missions and collective tasks.

4-3. FTX. The FTX provides a training method for the platoon to train an entire mission. It provides a logical sequence for performance of tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-4. Safety. All soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious during the conduct of any training exercise. All evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that they conduct all training in a safe manner. Prior to the beginning of an exercise, brief all personnel on specific safety measures that they must observe during the exercise. Use T&EO 71-2-C326.44-A30H when planning training in risk management procedures and safety analysis.

4-5. Fratricide. Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures that must be followed to avoid fratricide. These procedures include IFF, weapon control status, vehicle and aircraft recognition, corridors, routes, zones, flight levels, and other control measures.

Table 4-1. Training Exercises.

AVENGER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

STX

44-4-E0001

PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and squad leaders in the proper method of providing command and control procedures for the Avenger platoon and attached elements. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Provide and maintain command and control over their subordinates.

b. Exchange information by proper reporting per tactical SOPs.

c. Prepare estimates, plans, and orders.

d. Establish and employ tactical communications.

e. Displace the platoon CP.

f. Monitor, receive, and transmit early warning information.

2. Interface. This STX supports the following platoon training activities:

a. Provide ADA for Static Asset (STX 44-3-E0002).

b. Provide ADA for Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

c. Provide ADA During Breaching (STX 44-3-E0004).

d. Provide ADA for a Convoy (Integrated) (STX 44-3-E0005).

e. Provide ADA for a River Crossing (STX 44-3-E0006).

f. Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

g. Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

h. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery for logistical, personnel, and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercise without troops (TEWT) allows leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, and other leader actions. (See FM 25-4.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how the task is performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (See DA Pamphlet 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you must know the requirements of establishing the Avenger platoon CP, T&EO 44-4-2160.44-A30H.

(2) You must also know the requirements for the task Provide Command and Control, T&EO 44-1-2187.44-A30H.

(3) Review the standards for all the T&EOs that support this STX.

(4) You must read and understand platoon command and control procedures (see FM 44-44, Chapter 2, and FM 44-64, Chapter 2).

(5) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank or without blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(6) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) You must take advantage of terrain, especially to prevent aerial observation.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) When training this STX without a live asset, develop scenario cards for CP personnel and squads to practice reporting systems.

(6) Use smoke to deny OPFOR observation or as a decoy measure.

(7) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX, if possible.

(8) Conduct a loss of communication scenario to reestablish communications.

4. General Situation.

a. Task Force has established contact with an enemy force. He has the capability of indirect fire. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent. The Avenger platoon mission is to provide air defense for the task force.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the FRAGO by the platoon leader and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-4 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-2 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-2. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-4-E0001.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	React to battery recall	1 hour
2.	Receive mission order	1 hour
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Issue warning order	1 hour
5.	Conduct RSOP	2 hours
6.	Conduct troop-leading procedures	Per OPORD
7.	Tactical move and link up with TF CP	2 hours
8.	Collocate platoon CP with TF CP	Per OPORD
9.	Conduct AAR	1 hour
10.	Reestablish communications	1 hour
11.	Conduct command and control functions	6 hours
12.	Tactical move to AA Zulu	2 hours
13.	Conduct final AAR	2 hours
14.	End STX	1 hour
15.	Prepare to move back to garrison	Per OPORD
16.	Administrative move to garrison	Per OPORD
TOTAL		*20+ hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-1).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon headquarters completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-4 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts there of as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__1

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

a. Tasks to subordinate units:

(1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
(2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
(3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
(4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
(5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
(6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TS454814.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-1. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-4-E0001.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-4-E0001.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	0AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-4-E0001(continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A	Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized, including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs for STX 44-4-E0001.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-72
PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	03-3-C205.44-A30H	5-30
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-82
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-60

Table 4-4. T&EOs for STX 44-4-E0001 (continued).

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
CONDUCT LOGPAC ACTIVITIES	44-4-2282.44-A30H	5-92
ADJUST AIR DEFENSE COVERAGE (SHORAD)	44-4-5143—44-A30H	5-119
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	11-2-C302.44-A30H	5-96
INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE-CHANNEL GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINCGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	11-5-1102.44-A30H	5-104
OPERATE/MAINTAIN/TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	11-5-0202.44-A30H	5-101
OPERATE/MAINTAIN/TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	11-5-0201.44A30H	5-99
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0002

PROVIDE ADA FOR STATIC ASSET

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD for a static asset. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise, which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Task-organize Avenger and attached Stinger resources to support the commander's intent.

b. Consider the six ADA employment guidelines (early engagement, weighted coverage, depth, balanced fires, mutual support, and overlapping fires) as they apply to this task.

c. Conduct troop-leading procedures (T&EO 44-2-2294.44-A30H).

2. Interface. The following training activities support this STX:

a. Platoon.

(1) Provide Command and Control (STX 44-4-E0001).

(2) Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

b. Drills.

(1) Perform Target Engagement from a Remote Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D301).

(2) Perform Target Engagement (Air) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D302).

(3) Emplace and Prepare for Action (Crew Drill 44-5-304).

(4) Perform M3P Machine Gun Reload Procedures (Crew Drill 44-5-D305).

(5) Perform March Order (Crew Drill 44-5-D306).

(6) Perform Avenger Missile Reload Procedures (Crew Drill 44-5-D307).

c. This STX supports the following platoon FTX:

-- Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

d. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery commander for logistical and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for providing AD for static asset per FM 44-44.

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) Practice good cover and concealment.

(6) Use smoke to deny OPFOR observation or as a decoy measure.

(7) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX, if possible.

(8) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

4. General Situation.

a. The task force has established a defensive position. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms are imminent against the TF, DISCOM, Division Artillery, and aviation assets. The Avenger platoon mission is to provide AD for these critical assets.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-7 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-5 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-5 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-5. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0002.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive OPORD and start STX	Per OPORD
2.	Conduct IPB	3 hours
3.	Conduct RSOP	Per TSOP
4.	Conduct Troop-leading procedures	3 hours
5.	Issue movement order	1 hour
6.	Platoon links up with supported CP	Per OPORD
7.	AAR	1 hour
8.	Plan and coordinate AD	Throughout STX
9.	Squads occupy primary firing positions	Per TSOP
10.	Squads repel aerial attack by fixed-wing aircraft	1 hour
11.	Engagement report	Per TSOP
12.	AAR	Per TSOP
13.	Occupy secondary firing positions	Per OPORD
14.	Squads repel aerial attack by rotary-wing aircraft	1 hour
15.	Report casualties	Per TSOP
16.	Consolidate and reorganize	Per TSOP
17.	Prepare for new mission	Per OPORD
18.	Move with TF to NDP	Per OPORD
19.	Occupy NDP	Per OPORD
20.	Final AAR	2 hours
TOTAL		*12+ hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-2).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon headquarters completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-7 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements and the critical asset is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__2

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TS454814.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-3-E0002.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-6.

Table 4-6. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0002.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A		Per MTOE

Table 4-6. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0002 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized, including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-7. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0002.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
CONDUCT AVENGER SLING-LOAD	44-3-1204.44-A30H	5-14
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE-CHANNEL GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINCGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	11-5-1102.44-A30H	5-104
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-72
PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	03-3-C205.44-A30H	5-30
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C223.44-A30H	5-40
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42

Table 4-7. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0002. (continued).

CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES	08-2-C316.44-A30H	5-79
TREAT CASUALTIES	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-75
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	19-3-3105.44-A30H	5-5
HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	19-3-3106.44-A30H	5-86
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-82
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
PERFORM UNIT LEVEL MAINTENANCE	43-2-C322.44-A30H	5-88
CONDUCT LOGPAC ACTIVITIES	44-4-2282.44-A30H	5-92
RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING-LOAD RESUPPLY	55-2-C325.44-A30H	5-94

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0003

PROVIDE ADA FOR A MOVEMENT TO CONTACT

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD during movement to contact. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Consider the six ADA employment guidelines (early engagement, weighted coverage, depth, balanced fires, mutual support, and overlapping fires) as they apply to this task.

b. Task-organize MANPADS (when attached) to support the main body and advanced guard.

c. Deploy Avenger assets to overwatch choke point if additional ground security is available.

d. Deploy Avenger to support FS, CSS, C^2 aviation, and reserve assets.

e. Coordinate the ground security of Avenger and MANPADS with the supported unit.

2. Interface. The following training activities support this STX:

a. Platoon.

(1) Provide Command and Control (STX 44-4-E0001).

(2) Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

b. Drills.

(1) Perform Target Engagement From a Hasty Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D300).

(2) Perform Target Engagement (Air) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D302).

(3) Perform Target Engagement (Ground) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D303).

(4) Perform M3P Machine Gun Reload Procedures (Crew Drill 44-5-D305).

(5) Convert to MANPADS (Crew Drill 44-5-D308).

c. This STX supports the following platoon FTX:

-- Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

d. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery commander for logistical and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

(3) Task force CP through his liaison element.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for providing AD for a movement to contact per FM 44-44.

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) Practice good cover and concealment.

(6) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX, if possible.

(7) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

4. General Situation.

a. The task force is conducting a movement to contact. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent against the TF battle position. The Avenger platoon mission is to provide continuous AD for the TF.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-10 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-8 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-8 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0003.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive mission	Per OPORD
2.	Platoon CP and squad leaders conduct IPB	2 hours
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Platoon leader starts troop-leading procedures	4 hours
5.	AAR	Per TSOP
6.	Issue march order and platoon linkup with TF	2 hours
7.	Platoon leader plans and coordinates AD with TF CP	Throughout STX
8.	Platoon provides AD to TF	Throughout STX
9.	Squads repel aerial attack on TF	1 hour
10.	Engagement report to platoon CP	Per TSOP
11.	AAR	1 hour
12.	Platoon continues mission	Per OPORD
13.	Platoon CP reacts to ground attack	1 hour
14.	Platoon requests MEDEVAC (three casualties)	15 minutes
15.	Platoon consolidates and reorganizes	30 minutes
16.	Move to NDP	Per OPORD
17.	Final AAR	2 hours
18.	STX ends	Per OPORD
TOTAL		*13+hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-3).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-10 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements and the TF is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__3

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TS454818.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-3-E0003.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-9.

Table 4-9. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0003.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE

Table 4-9. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0003 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A	Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-10 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-10. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0003.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C226.44-A30H	5-49
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	11-2-C302.44-A30H	5-96
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	03-3-C202.44-A30H	5-27

Table 4-10. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0003 (continued).

RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	03-3-C203.44-A30H	5-27
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42
CONDUCT CHEMICAL RECONNAISSANCE	03-3-C225.44-A30H	5-46
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES	08-2-C316.44-A30H	5-79
TREAT CASUALTIES	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-75
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	19-3-3105.44-A30H	5-5
HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	19-3-3106.44-A30H	5-86
ADJUST AIR DEFENSE COVERAGE (SHORAD)	44-4-5143.44-A30H	5-119
CONDUCT AVENGER RIGGING FOR AIRDROP	44-3-1205.44-A30H	5-16
SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-82
RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING LOAD RESUPPLY	55-2-C325.44-A30H	5-94

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0004

PROVIDE ADA DURING BREACHING

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD during breaching. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Plan and deploy Avenger and MANPADS (when attached) to support the breach site.

b. Deploy Avenger and MANPADS (when attached) to provide air defense to the exiting point.

c. Provide air defense to FS and C^2 assets when they move through the breach site.

d. Coordinate the ground security of Avenger and MANPADS with unit conducting the breach.

Note: Avenger involvement in breaching operations occurs in later phases, when the breach site is secured and units supporting the maneuver elements move through.

---

2. Interface. The following training activities support this STX:

a. Platoon.

(1) Provide Command and Control (STX 44-4-E0001).

(2) Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

(3) Provide ADA for a Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

b. Drills.

(1) Perform Target Engagement From a Hasty Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D300).

(2) Perform Target Engagement (Air) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D302).

(3) Convert to MANPADS (Crew Drill 44-5-D308).

c. This STX supports the following platoon FTX:

-- Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

d. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery commander for logistical and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

(3) Task force CP through his liaison element.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for providing AD during breaching operations per FM 44-44.

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) Practice good cover and concealment.

(6) Conduct STX in conjunction with higher echelon STX if possible.

(7) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

(8) Practice T&EO 03-3-C209.44-A30H, React to Smoke Operations, with all platoon personnel.

4. General Situation.

a. The task force is conducting a breach. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent against the breach site. You have MANPADS assets attached. The Avenger platoon mission is to provide continuous AD for the TF during breaching operations.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-13 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-11 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-11 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-11. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0004.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive mission	Per OPORD
2.	Platoon CP and squad leaders conduct IPB	2 hours
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Start troop-leading procedures	2 hours
5.	AAR	Per TSOP
6.	Platoon links up with TF conducting the breach	1 hour
7.	Plan and recommend the AD plan	Throughout STX
8.	Platoon provides AD to TF conducting breaching	Per OPORD
9.	Platoon reacts to smoke operations	Per TSOP
10.	Squads repel aerial attack on breach site	1 hour
11.	AAR	Per TSOP
12.	Platoon continues mission	Per OPORD
13.	Platoon CP reacts to ground attack	Per OPORD
14.	Platoon requests a MEDEVAC (three casualties)	15 minutes
15.	Platoon consolidates and reorganizes	30 minutes
16.	AAR	1 hours
17.	Continue mission	Per OPORD
18.	Release from mission	Per OPORD
19.	Administrative move to NDP	1 hour
20.	STX ends final AAR	Per OPORD
TOTAL		*8+hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-4).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-13 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements, breach site, and the TF is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER 4

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TS454800.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-4. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-3-E0004.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-12.

Table 4-12. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0004.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A		Per MTOE

Table 4-12. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0004 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-13 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-13. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0004.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-60
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C208.44-A30H	5-34
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C206.44-A30H	5-32
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C223.44-A30H	5-40
RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C222.44-A30H	5-38

Table 4-13. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0004 (continued).

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-82
RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING-LOAD RESUPPLY	55-2-C325.44-A30H	5-94
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0005

PROVIDE ADA FOR A CONVOY (INTEGRATED)

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD for a convoy (integrated). This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Position squads to obtain mutual support.

b. Coordinate the ground security of Avenger with the unit conducting the convoy.

c. Position squads to obtain early warning.

d. Assign PTLs and sectors of fire.

e. Transmit local air defense warnings to convoy.

2. Interface. The following training activities support this STX:

a. Platoon.

(1) Provide Command and Control (STX 44-4-E0001).

(2) Provide ADA for a Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

b. Drills.

(1) Perform Target Engagement From a Hasty Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D300).

(2) Perform Target Engagement (Air) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D302).

c. This STX supports the following platoon FTX:

--- Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

d. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery commander for logistical and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

(3) Task force CP through his liaison element.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for providing AD for a convoy.

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) Practice good cover and concealment.

(6) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX if possible.

(7) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

(8) Practice T&EO 44-2-7008.44-A30H, Conduct Air Defense Operations (SHORAD), with all platoon personnel.

4. General Situation.

a. Your platoon is DS to company team during movement from AA DELTA to AA MIKE from vic coord_____NTL _____Z. Provide AD en route. Return to AA DELTA when reaching the RP. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent against the convoy.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-16 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-14 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-14 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-14. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0005.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive mission	Per OPORD
2.	Platoon CP and squad leaders conduct IPB	2 hours
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Start troop-leading procedures	2 hours
5.	AAR	Per TSOP
6.	Platoon links up with TF conducting the convoy	1 hour
7.	Plan and recommend the AD plan	Throughout STX
8.	Platoon leaves SP at time prescribed	Per OPORD
9.	Platoon provides AD to convoy	Per OPORD
10.	Platoon reacts to early warning	Per TSOP
11.	Squads repel aerial attack on convoy	1 hour
12.	AAR	Per TSOP
13.	Platoon continues mission	Per OPORD
14.	Platoon reacts to ground attack	Per OPORD
15.	Platoon requests MEDEVAC (1 casualty)	15 minutes
16.	Platoon continues with convoy	Per OPORD
17.	AAR	1 hours
18.	Arrive at RP	Per OPORD
19.	Administrative move back AA DELTA	1 hour
20.	End STX final AAR	Per OPORD
TOTAL		*8+hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-5).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-16 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements and convoy route is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER 5

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently with convoy element.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-5. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-4-E0005.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-15.

Table 4-15. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0005.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A		Per MTOE

Table 4-15. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0005 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized, including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-16 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-16. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0005.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-60
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C226.44-A30H	5-49
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE-CHANNEL GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINCGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	11-5-1102.44-A30H	5-104

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0006

PROVIDE ADA FOR A RIVER CROSSING

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD for a river crossing. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Be prepared to support river crossing either hasty or deliberated.

b. Place Avenger and MANPADS (when attached) in mass to cover air avenues of approach.

c. Coordinate with the unit conducting crossing for ground security.

d. Position Avengers out of the range of direct fire weapons.

e. Ensure continuous AD coverage of crossing site.

f. Deploy Avengers to maximize early engagement but maintain mutual support.

g. Ensure that the predominant employment guideline is overlapping fire, if risk is accepted and RISTA UAVs are the threat.

2. Interface. The following training activities support this STX:

a. Platoon.

(1) Provide Command and Control (STX 44-4-E0001).

(2) Provide ADA for a Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

b. Drills.

(1) Perform Target Engagement From a Hasty Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D300).

(2) Perform Target Engagement (Air) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D302).

(3) Perform Target Engagement (Ground) Using the M3P Machine Gun (Battle Drill 44-5-D303).

(4) Perform M3P Machine Gun Reload Procedures (Crew Drill 44-5-D305).

(5) Perform Target Engagement From a Remote Position (Battle Drill 44-5-D301).

(6) Convert to MANPADS (Crew Drill 44-5-D308).

c. This STX supports the following platoon FTX:

--- Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

d. Additionally, the platoon leader must maintain close coordination with—

(1) ADA battery commander for logistical and maneuver area support.

(2) Army aviation units who are a part of combined arms teams that require recognition using IFF and visual identification procedures.

(3) Task force CP through his liaison element.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for providing AD for a water crossing.

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use RCMATs for tracking when targets of opportunity are not available.

(4) Use pyrotechnics to add realism to training.

(5) Practice good cover and concealment.

(6) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX, if possible.

(7) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

(8) Make sure that platoon personnel know the requirements for T&EO 44-2-7008.44-A30H, Conduct Air Defense Operations (SHORAD).

4. General Situation.

a. Your platoon is DS to company team during river crossing at vic coord _____NTL_____Z. Provide AD for the river-crossing site and continue with company team after crossing, to objective MIKE. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent against the crossing site.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-19 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-17 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-17 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-17. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0006.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive mission	Per OPORD
2.	Platoon CP and squad leaders conduct IPB	2 hours
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Start troop-leading procedures	2 hours
5.	AAR	Per TSOP
6.	Platoon links up with TF conducting the crossing	1 hour
7.	Plan and recommend the AD plan	Throughout STX
8.	Squads occupy firing positions	Per OPORD
9.	Platoon provides AD to crossing site	Per OPORD
10.	Platoon reacts to early warning	Per TSOP
11.	Squads repel aerial attack on crossing site	1 hour
12.	AAR	Per TSOP
13.	Platoon continues with company team after crossing	Per OPORD
14.	End STX final AAR	1 hours
TOTAL		*7+hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation. The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-6).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-19 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements and simulated river-crossing site is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__6

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:

      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at water crossing site.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-6. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-3-E0006.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-18.

Table 4-18. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0006.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
760 Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A		Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)		Per MTOE

Table 4-18. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0006 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-19 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-19. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0006.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-55
COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-60
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES	08-2-C316.44-A30H	5-79
TREAT CASUALTIES	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-75
CONDUCT AVENGER SLING-LOAD	44-3-1204.44-A30H	5-14
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-72
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121

Table 4-19. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0006 (continued).

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	11-2-C302.44-A30H	5-96
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126

AVENGER PLATOON

STX

44-3-E0007

CONDUCT SUSTAINING OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This STX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in conducting sustaining operations. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This STX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Supervise and manage platoon sustaining operations.

b. Supervise platoon consolidation and reorganization.

c. Request personnel services support from the battery or supported unit.

d. Supervise platoon PMCS checks on all platoon vehicles and equipment.

e. Prepare the platoon for next mission.

2. Interface. The following platoon training activities support this STX:

a. Provide ADA for Static Assets (STX 44-3-E0002).

b. Provide ADA for a Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

c. Provide ADA During Breaching (STX 44-3-E0004).

d. Provide ADA for a Convoy (Integrated) (STX 44-3-E0005).

e. Provide ADA for a River Crossing (STX 44-3-E0006).

f. Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

g. Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

3. Training.

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks and drills that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The individual tasks at the end of each training and evaluation outline in Chapter 5 should be used as a source. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the STP 44-14S14-SM-TG, and the soldier's common tasks manual. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance

against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squads and platoons collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standards with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that can support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the Collective Task Number and Title to STX Matrix in Chapter 2.

(3) Leader training. Leader training should be on leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. One or all of the following methods trains in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or leader tasks. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOP. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and wargaming. (Use map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in wargaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model terrain boards or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

b. Training Tips. The following training tips are recommended:

(1) First, you and all your NCOs must know the requirements for sustaining air defense coverage (SHORAD) (T&EO 44-1-1045.44-A30H).

(2) Review the standards for all the T&EOs and drills that support this STX.

(3) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) With blank ammunition. The use of blank ammunition is encouraged to add realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without MILES.

(c) In all weather conditions.

(d) During the day or night.

(e) With or without NBC.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(4) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, in good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting training at close to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). Execute the STX under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase, using full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. Conduct this exercise at full speed after conducting building-block training to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this STX are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities.

(e) At least one O/C should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The O/C evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional O/Cs are required.

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy forces.

c. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

(1) The T&EOs at the end of this STX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission.

(2) Give platoon personnel a time limit to plan and backbrief the planning process.

(3) Use all appropriate references when conducting sustaining activities.

(4) Practice good cover and concealment.

(5) Conduct the STX in conjunction with a higher echelon STX, if possible.

(6) Practice MOPP with the advice from medical personnel.

(7) Make sure that platoon personnel know the requirements for T&EO 44-1-1045.44-A30H, Sustain Air Defense Operations, and T&EO 43-2-C322.44.A30H, Perform Unit Level Maintenance.

4. General Situation.

a. Your platoon is released from the mission. Move your platoon to NDP vic_____NTL_____Z. Conduct sustaining operations; be prepared to move on receipt of

FRAGO. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent against the crossing site.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-22 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-20 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-20 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-20. Estimated Time Needed to Train STX 44-3-E0007.

PLATOON STX SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Released from mission	Per OPORD
2.	Issue movement order to squad leaders	1 hour
3.	Start STX	Per OPORD
4.	Start troop-leading procedures	2 hours
5.	AAR	Per TSOP
6.	Platoon links up with TF moving to NDP	1 hour
7.	Occupy NDP area of responsibility	1 hour
8.	AAR	1 hour
9.	Platoon starts sustaining operations	Per OPORD
10.	Platoon maintains security in coordination with supported unit	Per TSOP
11.	Platoon prepares for next mission	Per OPORD
12.	AAR	Per TSOP
13.	End STX	Per OPORD
TOTAL		*6+hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

5. Special Situation The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-7).

b. Issue warning order and coordinate with supported unit.

c. You now alert your key NCOs and start your map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-22 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this STX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__7

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TF NDP.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-7. Sample FRAGO for STX 44-3-E0007.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-21.

Table 4-21. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0007.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE

Table 4-21 Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 44-3-E0007 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A	Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized, including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-22 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this STX.

Table 4-22. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0007.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-72
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C223.44-A30H	5-40
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES	08-2-C316.44-A30H	5-79
TREAT CASUALTIES	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-75
SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
CONDUCT AVENGER SLING-LOAD	44-3-1204.44-A30H	5-14
RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING-LOAD RESUPPLY	55-2-C325.44-A30H	5-94

Table 4-22. T&EOs for STX 44-3-E0007 (continued).

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT LOGPAC ACTIVITIES	44-4-2282.44-A30H	5-92
PERFORM UNIT LEVEL MAINTENANCE	43-2-C322.44-A30H	5-88
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS	08-2-R315.44-A30H	5-84
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-30H	5-82

AVENGER PLATOON

FTX

44-3-E0008

PROVIDE ADA FOR THE BRIGADE COMBAT TEAM

1. Objective. This FTX trains the platoon leader and NCOs in providing AD for the brigade combat team. This STX is designed as a free play, force-on-force exercise which provides a flexible training vehicle for training objectives. The platoon leader should modify the sequence of events through his selection of supporting events to meet his specific training objectives. This FTX also trains the platoon leader and NCOs to—

a. Plan and conduct AD operations in support of division critical assets.

b. Supervise crew drills.

c. Conduct IPB (third dimension) to support the commander's intent.

2. Interface. The following platoon training activities support this FTX:

a. Provide ADA for Static Assets (STX 44-3-E0002).

b. Provide ADA for a Movement to Contact (STX 44-3-E0003).

c. Provide ADA During Breaching (STX 44-3-E0004).

d. Provide ADA for a Convoy (Integrated) (STX 44-3-E0005).

e. Provide ADA for a River Crossing (STX 44-3-E0006).

f. Conduct Sustaining Operations (STX 44-3-E0007).

g. Provide ADA for the Brigade Combat Team (FTX 44-3-E0008).

3. Training Enhancers. The training enhancers for this STX are as follows:

a. The T&EOs at the end of this FTX show the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission. The following training fundamentals will help the unit perform the mission:

(1) The platoon leader and key NCOs must have a basic understanding of how the brigade combat team TF operates on the offense per FMs 71-100-3, 90-4, and 90-26 and how they can best protect the task force from attack by aerial platforms. The following training activities are conducted to enhance this FTX:

(a) Map reconnaissance tasks.

(b) Terrain board exercise, using a depiction of the exact area where the FTX will be conducted.

(c) TEWT.

Note: All commanders, trainers, and leaders must plan, train, and stress all procedures, which must be followed to avoid fratricide.

---

(2) T&EO 08-2-R303.44-A30H, Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures.

(a) Ensure soldiers get 3 to 4 hours of uninterrupted sleep per day.

(b) Adjust the plan to the tactical situation.

(3) Always use OPFOR and MILES/AGES/AD equipment, if available. These add realism to the tactical situation and can point out mistakes made by your subordinates.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of the OPORD and ends after all T&EOs listed in Table 4-25 are rated GO by the evaluator(s). Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency. Table 4-23 shows the estimated time needed for each part of the exercise. Table 4-23 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-23. Estimated Time Needed to Train FTX 44-3-E0008.

PLATOON FTX 44-3-E0008 SCENARIO		
EVENT	**ACTION**	**ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED**
1.	Receive WO: (Prepare for FTX)	6 hours
2.	Conduct IPB (SHORAD) T&EO 44-4-2261.44-A30H	Per OPORD
3.	Conduct map reconnaissance	Per OPORD
4.	Conduct AAR	1 hour
5.	Prepare for operations under NBC conditions	Throughout FTX
6.	Plan AD and provide command and control	Per OPORD
7.	Start troop-leading procedures (T&EO 44-2-2294.44A30H)	Per OPORD
8.	Start FTX	Per OPORD
9.	Link up with TF and establish platoon liaison	Per OPORD
10.	Receive TF commander priorities for AD	Per OPORD
11.	Revise AD plan and recommend to TF commander	1 hour
12.	Conduct AAR	1 hour
13.	Deploy squads and collocate platoon CP with TF TOC	Per OPORD
14.	Provide continuous AD to TF	Throughout FTX
15.	React to early warning	Per TSOP
16.	Repel aerial attack on TF	Per drill book
17.	Submit engagement report to CP	Per TSOP
18.	Conduct final AAR	1 hour
19.	End FTX	Per OPORD
20.	Sustaining operations and prepare for next mission	3 hours
TOTAL		*13+ hours

*Allow extra time for night training, retraining, NBC conditions, and AARs. First, train events to standards, and then train to meet standards within time limitations. Time required will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the platoon.

4. General Situation.

a. The platoon is DS to task force conducting offensive operations. The enemy has used chemicals and will probably do so again.

b. Air parity exists.

c. The tactical situation is such that attack by UAVs, CMs, and other aerial platforms is imminent.

5. Special Situation The special situation is as follows:

a. The battery commander or TF commander issues the FRAGO (Figure 4-8).

b. You now alert your key NCOs, and start troop-leading procedures and map reconnaissance. This exercise ends when your platoon completes the T&EOs listed in Table 4-25 with a GO rating. Conduct your AAR after the exercise and, if necessary, repeat the exercise or parts thereof as needed to attain proficiency.

6. Support Requirements. The support requirements for this FTX include the following:

a. Minimum Trainers/Observer/Controllers. The platoon leader, who is the trainer and observer, conducts this exercise. If using OPFOR, additional O/Cs are necessary.

b. Vehicles and Communications. Those vehicles and communications equipment organic to the platoon are required.

c. General Purpose Items. Those items such as office supplies, map overlays, grease pencils, message journal logs, maps, OPORD, report forms, unit SOPs, and appropriate reference material are required.

d. Maneuver Area. An area large enough to accommodate all platoon elements is required.

Classification

Copy_1__of_2__Copies
3d Bde, 52d ID DIV
FT MACK, (NK 280010) LA
_____(D-2, H-4)

FRAGMENTARY ORDER__8

References: OPORD 1

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local

Task Organization: 2d platoon DS to company team eff 141400ZJan.

1. SITUATION Enemy Infantry battalion delaying advance of TF 1-5.

2. MISSION No change.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Tasks to subordinate units:
      (1) 1st Team LOC TS456835, PTL 0 degrees.
      (2) 2nd Team LOC TS481814, PTL 90 degrees.
      (3) 3rd Team LOC TS454783, PTL 180 degrees.
      (4) 4th Team LOC TS485870, PTL 230 degrees.
      (5) 5th Team LOC TS 486150, PTL 270 degrees.
      (6) 6th Team LOC TS 453010, PTL 315 degrees.

   b. Coordinating instructions: "Current overlay remains in effect."

4. SERVICE SUPPORT No change to OPORD.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL Platoon CP currently at TF TOC.

ACKNOWLEDGE. Notify this headquarters upon receipt of order and again upon understanding the order. Direct coordination with supported unit is authorized.

CORREDOR
CPT

Classification

Figure 4-8. Sample FRAGO for FTX 44-3-E0008.

e. Consolidated support requirements. See Table 4-24.

Table 4-24. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 44-3-E0008.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable Telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A		Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A		Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)		Per MTOE

Table 4-24. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 44-3-E0008 (continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar Motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals Ready to Eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. The platoon leader determines how much to use during each training exercise to meet his training objectives. However, he cannot exceed his annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The platoon leader will request and use all MILES equipment authorized including OPFOR MILES equipment.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-25 lists the T&EOs (found in Chapter 5) which the platoon leader uses in training and evaluating this FTX.

Table 4-25. T&EOs for FTX 44-3-E0008.

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT	19-3-3105.44-A30H	5-5
DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
CONDUCT AVENGER SLING-LOAD	44-3-1204.44-A30H	5-14
CONDUCT AVENGER RIGGING FOR AIRDROP	44-3-1205.44-A30H	5-16
ESTABLISH THE PLATOON CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-115
CONDUCT A CONVOY	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
PREPARE FOR A CHEMICAL ATTACK	03-3-C202.44-A30H	5-25
RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL ATTACK	03-3-C203.44-A30H	5-27
PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE	03-3-C205.44-A30H	5-30
PREPARE FOR A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C206.44-A30H	5-32
CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C208.44-A30H	5-34
REACT TO SMOKE OPERATIONS	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C222.44-A30H	5-38
RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK	03-3-C223.44-A30H	5-40
CONDUCT OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42
CONDUCT CHEMICAL RECONNAISSANCE	03-3-C225.44-A30H	5-46
CROSS A CHEMICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA	03-3-C226.44-A30H	5-49

Table 4-25. T&EOs for FTX 44-3-E0008 (continued).

T&EO SEQUENCE AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT SECURITY OF A COMMAND POST	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-63
MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-72
PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-3A0H	5-55
COORDINATE AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-60
TAKE ACTIVE COMBINED ARMS AD MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AERIAL PLATFORMS	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-65
CONDUCT AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-68
TREAT CASUALTIES	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-75
TRANSPORT CASUALTIES	08-2-C316.44-A30H	5-79
CONDUCT BATTLEFIELD STRESS REDUCTION AND PREVENTION PROCEDURES	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-82
PERFORM FIELD SANITATION FUNCTIONS	08-2-R315.44-A30H	5-84
HANDLE ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	19-3-3106.44-A30H	5-86
PERFORM UNIT LEVEL MAINTENANCE	43-2-C322.44-A30H	5-88
CONDUCT LOGPAC ACTIVITIES	44-4-2282.44-A30H	5-92
RECEIVE EXTERNAL SLING-LOAD RESUPPLY	55-2-C325.44-A30H	5-94
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A SINGLE-CHANNEL VOICE RADIO NET	11-2-C302.44-A30H	5-96
OPERATE/MAINTAIN/TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	11-5-0201.44-A30H	5-99
OPERATE/MAINTAIN/TROUBLESHOOT PLATFORM WITH APPLIQUE, PRECISION LIGHTWEIGHT GPS RECEIVER (PLGR) AND SINCGARS SYSTEM IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM (SIP)	11-5-0202.44-A30H	5-101
INSTALL/OPERATE/MAINTAIN A SINGLE-CHANNEL GROUND AND AIRBORNE RADIO SYSTEM (SINCGARS) FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET	11-5-1102.44-A30H	5-104
SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-110
CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-112
ADJUST AIR DEFENSE COVERAGE (SHORAD)	44-4-5143.44-A30H	5-119
ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-123
DISSEMINATE EARLY WARNING	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-121
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. General. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. Figure 5-1 lists the T&EOs in this chapter. They are grouped by BOS to make it easier to locate a specific T&EO. Collective Task Number and Titles to STX Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The “M” identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T—Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P—Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U—Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an “X” in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a “GO” for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as “GO.” It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the unit’s demonstrated performance as a “GO” or “NO-GO.” It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks**.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR Tasks and Standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or “lose” to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain their task standards using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Use. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

5-5. Environment. Commanders, trainers, and leaders must include a review of possible environmental contamination in each applicable task that will be performed. This includes contamination to the subsurface, surface, waterways, vegetation, and superfaces (air). Contamination includes chemical, oil, grease, smoke, fumes, unexploded ordnance, et cetera.

Develop Intelligence

Deploy /Conduct Maneuver

Protect the Force

Perform CSS and Sustainment

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs.

Exercise Command and Control

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs (Continued).

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.44-A30H)
(FM 19-40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured documents and equipment based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured documents and equipment. a. Annotates type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photos, rifles, or radios). b. Annotates date and time of capture. c. Annotates place of capture (grid coordinates). d. Annotates capturing unit. e. Annotates circumstances of capture. f. Annotates prisoner's name (if taken from EPW). *2. The element leader reports capture of documents or equipment to higher headquarters. a. Reports type of document or equipment. b. Reports date and time of capture. c. Reports capturing unit. d. Reports place of capture (grid coordinates). *3. The element leader disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance from higher headquarters. a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons the equipment. b. Evacuates documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-337-6001	PROCESS CAPTURED MATERIEL

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Develop IPB (SHORAD) (44-4-2261.44-A30H)
(FM 34-130) (FM 34-1) (FM 44-43)
(FM 44-44) (FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Element received the battery warning order. The task force commander has provided his planning guidance and concept of operations by requiring estimates. Threat forces have air superiority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Element develops an IPB (third dimension) to develop the unit's estimate, obtains approval, and publishes the estimate as part of the battery plans or orders. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Leader receives warning order. a. Coordinate with C^3I platoon leader for all EW information to include— (1) Sensor frequencies. (2) Sensor location. (3) Sensor security from air and ground attack. (4) Which sensor is broadcasting EW. (5) Sensor contingency plan. b. Define the battlefield environment. Note: The AO in air defense operations focuses on the third dimension: the element of altitude. Unlike "ground" AOs, the air AO often encompasses smaller areas that are within the commander's AO, such as "no-fire" areas. Factors to consider in determining the locations of these points and the limits of the air AI are— • Location of tactical ballistic missiles. • Location of threat airfields. • Location of FARPs. • Location of aids to navigation. • Range capabilities of threat aircraft. • Altitude capabilities of threat aircraft. • Range capabilities of tactical ballistic missiles. • Flight profiles of tactical ballistic missiles. 2. Element describes the battlefield's effect. Specific considerations include— a. Probable target installations or areas. (Where are the threat's likely targets located?) b. Likely air AAs. • Do they provide ease of navigation? • Do they provide protection to the aircraft from radar and weapons? • Do they allow evasive maneuver? • Do they allow for the full use of aircraft speed? • Do they support ground force operations?		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Likely LZs or DZs. • Are they near likely objectives? • Do they provide concealment and cover to the delivered forces? • Do they allow easy aircraft ingress and egress? d. Likely standoff attack orbits. e. Line of sight from proposed ADA weapons locations. f. Limiting and success-inducing effects of weather on air operations. g. Expected times on targets based on weather effects or light data. 3. Element evaluates the threat. Focus on threats posed by— a. UAVs. b. Missiles (cruise and ballistic). c. Fixed-wing aircraft. d. Rotary-wing aircraft. e. Airborne and air assault forces. f. Flight operations tactics. g. Ordnance types and availability. h. Ordnance delivery techniques such as standoff ranges, release speeds and altitudes, and guidance systems. i. Technical capabilities of aircraft such as all-weather or night capability, as well as maximum and minimum speeds, ceilings, range, payloads (in terms of ordnance, number and types of equipment, or passengers), and aerial refueling capability. j. Target selection priorities for air strikes or attack by air assaults. k. Air strikes allocation procedures. l. Navigation capabilities. m. Threats to friendly ADA assets, including threat ground forces and EW assets. 4. Element determines threat courses of action. a. Determines air COAs (acquired supported unit basic IPB products, including situation templates). b. Evaluates the general COAs they portray and determines how the threat might support them with air power. c. Considers the following air COAs: • Likely locations of FARPs. • Likely timing of air strikes or air assault operations. • Likely targets and objectives. (Will the threat attempt destruction or neutralization?) • Likely air corridors and air AAs. • Strike package composition, flight profiles, and spacing in time and space, including altitudes. • Where friendly ADA assets fit into the threat COA. (Do they need to be destroyed or suppressed to ensure the operation's success?) • Threat ground COAs that might require movement of friendly ADA assets.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5502	ISSUE A FRAGMENTARY ORDER (FRAGO)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct RSOP (SHORAD) (44-1-9046.44-A30H)
(FM 44-46) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18)
(FM 24-33) (FM 25-101) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon receives an MWO that requires the platoon to move. The unit leader directs the RSOP leader to conduct the RSOP. The necessary trained personnel with equipment are available to perform the RSOP under all NBC and environmental conditions, both day and night. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The RSOP departs within 30 minutes of the receipt of the movement warning order, performs a route reconnaissance, and secures and lays out the new site. The time required to perform this task is increased when operating in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Unit leader conducts a briefing for the RSOP leaders. The briefing includes, but is not limited to— a. The mission. b. Enemy and friendly situation. c. Any NBC intelligence. d. The challenge and password. e. Radio frequencies and call signs. f. Current ADW. g. Current state of readiness (SOR).		
*2. Unit leader and RSOP leaders perform a map reconnaissance and identify— a. Start point. b. Location of friendly units. c. Potential ambush sites. d. Checkpoints/rally points. e. Primary and alternate platoon element positions. f. Primary and secondary routes to the new site.		
*3. The RSOP leader assembles RSOP team or determines the duties for a two-soldier crew depending on METT-TC, to include— a. The necessary personnel for security. b. Communications personnel. c. Mine-detecting team. d. NBC survey and monitoring team. e. Personnel to lay out the site. f. Drivers. g. Equipment guides. h. Road guides.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*4. The RSOP leader ensures the loading of RSOP equipment (if available) per the unit load plan to include— a. A three-day supply of rations and water. b. An M8A1 chemical alarm. c. NBC marking kit. d. M256A1 chemical agent detector kit. e. A mine-detecting set, portable, metallic, and nonmetallic. f. Radiacmeters IM-174/PD and IM-93A. g. Telephone sets TA-312/PT. h. An antenna group (OE-254). i. Cable, telephone, WD1. j. A measuring tape or a marked piece of engineer tape. k. Equipment marking stakes. l. A map of the area of operation. m. Camouflage screen systems. n. Individual weapons and ammunition for all personnel. o. Individual protective equipment and LBE/LBV. p. M3P .50-cal machine gun, with ammunition. q. NVGs to include flashlights with colored lenses. r. Grounding rods.		
*5. The RSOP leaders brief RSOP members on— a. All items covered in the unit leader's briefing. b. Convoy speeds, both day and night. c. Maximum catch-up speeds. d. Risk assessment. e. Procedures to follow in case of a vehicle breakdown, ground attack, air attack, communications outage, or when encountering a roadblock.		
*6. The RSOP leaders make certain that— a. All drivers have a strip map/overlay. b. All personnel have their individual weapons, LBE/LBV, and MOPP gear. c. The chemical alarm is operational and switched on. d. The radio operator enters all command nets. (1) Battery FREQ. (2) Platoon FREQ. e. The towed loads are properly connected to the prime mover.		
*7. The unit/RSOP leader performs a route reconnaissance. The route reconnaissance determines if the selected route is acceptable. The unit leader considers— a. Overhead clearance. b. Route security. c. Roadway trafficability. d. Roadway width. e. Bridge weight classification. f. Fording sites. g. Areas available for convoy dispersion. h. Distinguishable landmarks. i. Locations for road guides (if available).		
*8. The RSOP leader directs MOPP level 4 team to secure the new site as follows: Note: If only two personnel are performing these steps, then the gunner will control security and communications with the Avenger weapon system based on platoon SOP. This allows the team leader time to conduct the necessary checks before moving into position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. NBC team/leader checks the area using radiacmeter, detector paper, and the chemical agent detector kit. b. The mine detection team/leader conducts a broad zigzag sweep of the site. c. The security team/gunner maintains security of the area of operation. d. The RSOP leader establishes the CP/Avenger position. e. The NBC team continually examines the area for contamination, and positions the alarm unit at the CP and the detector unit upwind. f. The RSOP leader positions a machine gun to cover the site entry road. Note: The RSOP leader initiates unmasking procedures per local SOP. When using unmasking procedures, the RSOP leader declares, "ALL CLEAR," or orders a lower level MOPP. *9. The RSOP leader conducts a site survey and terrain analysis to ensure that the site— a. Provides immediate access. b. Provides concealment. c. Meets equipment requirements. *10. The RSOP leader lays out the new site. He designates areas for— a. Weapon system parking for perimeter defense/ PTL. b. Equipment parking. c. Trash point. d. Fuel point. e. Latrine. *11. The RSOP leader ensures that the equipment is laid out as follows: - Emplaced and prepared for action depending on METT-TC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP
	071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS
STP 21-24-SMCT	051-193-1013	NEUTRALIZE BOOBY TRAPS
	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	071-329-1009	CONVERT AZIMUTHS
	071-329-1011	ORIENT A MAP USING A LENSATIC COMPASS
	071-329-1014	LOCATE AN UNKNOWN POINT ON A MAP AND ON THE GROUND BY INTERSECTION
	071-329-1015	LOCATE AN UNKNOWN POINT ON A MAP AND THE GROUND BY RESECTION
	071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY
	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON
	093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD
	551-721-3359	PREPARE A STRIP MAP
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	441-066-2017	CONDUCT A MAP RECONNAISSANCE
	441-066-3102	PERFORM RSOP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Avenger Sling-Load (44-3-1204.44-A30H)
(FM 10-450-5) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is given the mission to sling-load from one location to another. The platoon must plan the sling-load and conduct the mission in any weather condition and MOPP level, day or night. All platoon personnel are present. TOE equipment is on hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon conducts the sling-load without damage to equipment or injury to personnel. The platoon complies with the movement times designated in the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon receives a FRAGO requiring them to conduct a sling-load to reach their next area of operation. The following information is included for planning purposes: a. Type of airlift. b. Time of mission. c. Location of pickup zone. d. Location of landing zone. e. Aviation unit to conduct the sling-load and its coordination element or point of contact. f. Next mission.		
*2. The unit leader or platoon sergeant issues a warning order with the following information: a. Mission. b. Approximate time of departure. c. Specific instructions to squads (if required).		
*3. The unit leader coordinates the sling-load with the aviation unit. a. Gets special instructions (if any). b. Coordinates pickup zone and landing zone locations for platoon CP and squads. c. Coordinates pickup times.		
*4. The unit leader coordinates the sling-load for the platoon. a. Ensures squads prepare for sling-load by helicopter. b. Ensures squads are at designated pickup zones on time. c. Ensures CP equipment is operational and prepared for sling-load. d. Prepares platoon FRAGO.		
*5. The unit leader issues the FRAGO to squads with the following information: a. Mission. b. Friendly and threat situation. c. Pickup and landing zones. d. Times for CP and squad pickup.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Visual and radio signal instructions. f. Special instructions (if any). *6. The unit leader supervises platoon airlift. a. Ensures platoon CP and squads have prepared for sling-load. b. Ensures platoon CP and squads are at pickup locations on time. c. Coordinates with movement control officer at main landing zone.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-066-3102	PERFORM RSOP
	441-066-4004	PREPARE A PLATOON OPERATION ORDER
	441-092-1046	PREPARE THE AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM FOR AIRLIFT
	441-092-2004	SUPERVISE MARCH ORDER OF AN AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM
	441-092-3005	SUPERVISE PREPARATION OF AN AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM FOR AIRLIFT
	441-092-4001	PLAN EMPLOYMENT OF AN AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM PLATOON
	441-092-4009	COORDINATE PREPARATION FOR AIRLIFT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Avenger Rigging for Airdrop (44-3-1205.44-A30H)
(FM 10-550) (TM 10-1670-268-20&P)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is supporting an airborne task force. The platoon must plan and conduct the Avenger weapon system rigging in coordination with unit rigger personnel in any MOPP level, day or night. Personnel required to conduct rigging are present. School trained rigger is present. Three G-11B cargo parachutes and all equipment to rig the Avenger weapon system are on hand. All TOE equipment is on hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Under the guidance and supervision of the rigger, the platoon prepares the Avenger system on a 28-foot type V platform for an airdrop without damage to equipment or injury to personnel. The platoon has 6 hours to rig one Avenger. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Platoon personnel prepare a 28-foot type V airdrop platform. a. Inspect, or assemble, the platform. b. Install suspension links. c. Install tandem links. d. Attach and number clevises. 2. Platoon personnel prepare and position honeycomb stacks and load spreader.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	091-721-1346	DRIVE AN M998-SERIES VEHICLE
	441-066-3102	PERFORM RSOP
	441-066-3103	PERFORM SQUAD, TEAM, OR SECTION CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS
	441-066-4004	PREPARE A PLATOON OPERATION ORDER

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	441-092-1020	PERFORM GUNNER DUTIES DURING M3P MACHINE GUN UNLOADING
	441-092-1021	PERFORM DRIVER DUTIES DURING M3P MACHINE GUN LOADING
	441-092-1030	PERFORM EMERGENCY PROCEDURES FOR DUD MISSILES (STINGER)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (55-2-C324.44-A30H)
(FM 55-30)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An OPORD requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The battery SOP with movement readiness levels and the current loading plans are available. The convoy may be performed during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. Column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Time required to conduct the convoy increases when conducting task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Unit leader conducts a map reconnaissance using all available POSNAV and terrain analysis capabilities to include space-based assets. (01-7300.75-0500) a. Identifies SP. b. Identifies locations of friendly units. c. Identifies potential ambush sites. d. Identifies checkpoints. e. Identifies sites for scheduled halts. f. Identifies RP.		
2. Reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POSNAV and mapping capabilities available. a. Wears designated MOPP gear. b. Activates automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitors radiation monitoring devices. d. Verifies map information. e. Lists capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Lists locations of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepares map overlay. h. Computes travel time. i. Prepares strip map.		
*3. Convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters. (01-7300.75-0500) a. Coordinates for MP. b. Coordinates for medical support. c. Coordinates for fire support. d. Coordinates for engineer support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Coordinates for maintenance contact team support. f. Coordinates for additional requirements.		
4. Battery prepares vehicles and equipment. a. Performs PMCS. b. Corrects minor deficiencies. c. Reports major deficiencies. d. Hardens vehicles using sandbags and/or other authorized materials. e. Covers unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel. f. Covers or removes reflective surfaces. g. Places antennas at lowest height. h. Turns radio volumes and squelches to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements.		
*5. Convoy commander organizes convoy. a. Assigns cargo vehicle positions. b. Assigns control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigns recovery vehicle(s) position. d. Assigns hardened vehicle(s) near the head of the convoy. e. Assigns passenger locations. f. Assigns air guards. g. Organizes trail party element. h. Provides vehicle position listings to trail party leader.		
*6. Convoy commander briefs convoy personnel. (01-7300.75-0500) a. Briefs strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Briefs convoy chain of command. c. Briefs convoy route. d. Prescribes the rate of march and catch-up speed. e. Briefs convoy intervals. f. Identifies scheduled halts. g. Briefs accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefs immediate action security measures. i. Briefs blackout condition procedures. j. Identifies location of medical support. k. Identifies location of maintenance support. l. Briefs communication procedures. m. Provides location and identification of destination.		
7. Convoy crosses SP. a. Crosses at specified time. b. Verifies the vehicles that have crossed the SP. c. Forwards SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit has passed the SP.		
*8. Convoy commander provides convoy information to higher headquarters. a. Reports SP crossing time. b. Reports checkpoint(s) clearance when crossed. c. Reports data that conflicts with maps. d. Employs correct SOI codes in all transmissions. e. Reports RP crossing time.		
9. Convoy maintains march discipline. a. Maintains designated march speed. b. Maintains proper vehicle interval.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Crosses checkpoints as scheduled. d. Reacts correctly to convoy commander's signals. e. Maintains security throughout movement and during halts.		
10. Battery conducts scheduled halt(s). a. Stops column at prescribed time. b. Maintains prescribed vehicular interval. c. Moves vehicles off road. d. Establishes local security. e. Performs PMCS. f. Inspects vehicle loads. g. Departs at specified times.		
11. Battery conducts unscheduled halt(s). a. Alerts march column. b. Reports stoppage to higher headquarters. c. Maintains prescribed vehicular interval. d. Establishes local security. e. Reports resumption of march to higher headquarters.		
12. Convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provides visual adjustment period. b. Prepares vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintains prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wears night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wears regular eye protection goggles. f. Employs ground guides during poor visibility periods.		
13. Trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspects disabled vehicle. b. Repairs disabled vehicle, when possible. c. Tows vehicles. d. Reports vehicle status to convoy commander.		
14. Convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identifies weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Employs close column formation. c. Obeys traffic control directions. d. Employs direction guides at critical intersections.		
15. Convoy crosses RP. a. Crosses at specified time. b. Verifies the vehicles that have crossed the RP. c. Forwards crossing report to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER
	091-721-1346	DRIVE AN M998-SERIES VEHICLE
	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	113-587-2070	OPERATE SINCGARS SINGLE CHANNEL (SC)
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	551-721-1358	PREPARE VEHICLE FOR MOVEMENT AND/OR SHIPMENT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS
BATTERY HQS

TASK: Prepare for Operations Under NBC Conditions (03-3-C201.44-A30H)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters informs the unit that the OPFOR is conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their LCE, having MOPP gear readily available (within the work area). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. a. Ensures that NBC detection equipment is issued to trained operators. b. Ensures that NBC detection equipment is employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identifies equipment shortages. d. Takes action to obtain replacement equipment.		
2. Unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher headquarters or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the OPORD. a. Soldiers can mask and hood within 15 seconds. b. Soldiers can assume MOPP4 within 8 minutes.		
3. Unit soldiers take actions to protect themselves against NBC attack. a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepare protective shelters such as individual fighting positions with overhead cover.		
*4. Unit leader adjusts MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Receives and analyzes the enemy NBC threat capability. Note: Some considerations are— • Is the unit targeted or can it be targeted? • Does the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? • When or where would the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collects and analyzes weather data. Note: Some considerations are— • Is it day or night? • What are the current weather conditions (see CDM or weather report)? • What are the weather conditions 2, 4, 6 hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzes the unit status and mission. Note: Some considerations are— • What is the mission? • What is the work rate? • How long will the work take?		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
• What is the training and physical level of the unit? • How long will it take to warn all soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1026	MAINTAIN YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2012	SUPERVISE THE FITTING OF PROTECTIVE MASKS
	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-504-3001	SUPERVISE POSITIONING OF THE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARM
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 4 AVENGER SQUADS
BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.44-A30H)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The OPFOR is conducting chemical warfare, or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel must assume MOPP4 within 8 minutes and complete their preparation efforts prior to the attack or its effects reaching their location. Unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water, and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Unit leader issues a warning order. 2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assume MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attach M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists, and to either their right or left ankles, and to vehicles. c. Conduct MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplace chemical agent alarms upwind of position. 3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions/shelters. a. Use existing natural or man-made facilities as fighting positions and shelters (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels). b. Dig fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. Note: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits. *4. NCOs check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensure personnel are at MOPP4. b. Ensure individual and platoon fighting positions are hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. *5. Unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1020	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-504-3001	SUPERVISE POSITIONING OF THE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARM
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.44-A30H)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in MOPP2. Intelligence indicates that the OPFOR has initiated chemical warfare. Automatic alarm sounds or detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal/nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 15 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical/biological attack. a. Put on protective masks with hoods within 15 seconds. b. Give the alarm: vocal/nonvocal. c. Assume MOPP4 as soon as possible. d. Seek additional shelter if available. e. Administer a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administer nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Check soldiers to ensure protective measures are followed.		
2. Soldiers take additional protective measures. a. Protect exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits. c. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.		
3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Conduct skin decontamination. b. Conduct wipedown of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decon kits. c. Conduct operator's spraydown of equipment.		
* 4. Leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters. a. Ensure that casualties are provided medical care. b. Report casualties. c. Submit NBC 1 report to higher headquarters immediately. d. Continue mission or request movement to alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1008	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHILE ELIMINATING BODY WASTE WHEN WEARING MOPP4
	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1019	REACT TO CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL HAZARD/ATTACK
	031-503-1020	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1033	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN USING THE M291 SKIN DECONTAMINATING KIT (SDK)

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1034	DECONTAMINATE YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING THE M295 INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION KIT (IEDK)
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3002	CONDUCT UNMASKING PROCEDURES
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
	031-507-3003	SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.44-A30H)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a STRIKWARN message from higher headquarters directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of friendly nuclear strike warning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated radio operator(s) acknowledges STRIKWARN message. a. Authenticates the call. b. Acknowledges warning by return message. * 2. Unit leader issues warning order. a. Warns subordinate and affected units. b. Ensures subordinates execute actions as directed. 3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Place vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding. b. Disconnect nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tie down essential antennas. d. Take down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improve shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. Note: Add sandbags to shelters, individual fighting positions, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. f. Zero dosimeters. g. Secure loose flammable, or explosive items, and food or water containers, to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING (ENTERING OR EXITING) A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.44-A30H)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment, and conducts periodic monitoring.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring all soldiers understand the order.		
2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment per unit SOP. c. Ties down essential antennas. d. Takes down nonessential antenna leads per unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeros dosimeters. g. Secures loose, flammable, or explosive items, and food or water containers, to protect them from nuclear weapons effects. h. Soldiers take cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Soldiers use field expedient shelters.		
3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continues periodic monitoring. b. Reports all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	031-506-1052	PROTECT YOURSELF AND OTHERS FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION BY USING (ENTERING OR EXITING) A COLLECTIVE PROTECTION SHELTER
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.44-A30H)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. Approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. a. Direct individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Receive operational exposure guidance (OEG) from commander (turn back dose/turn back dose rate). c. Ensure radiac equipment operators check instruments. 2. The unit prepares for crossing. a. Identifies extra shielding requirements (for example, vehicles use sandbags on the floor). b. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers it with available material. c. Starts continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoids stirring up dust. b. Keeps out of dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducts movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checks for casualties. b. Reports casualties (if applicable). c. Conducts necessary decontamination. d. Evacuates casualties. e. Continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.44-A30H)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters smoke, friendly or enemy, while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal their own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Unit does not allow smoke to impede performance of mission. a. Performs its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Uses threat smoke to conceal their own movements. c. Moves to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke. d. Considers using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.		
2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. a. Coordinates smoke operations with unit commander or supported unit. b. Determines wind direction and speed. c. Determines where to release smoke and where it will travel. d. Determines duration of smoke operations. e. Determines the effects of weather conditions of their smoke plan. f. Ensures that smoke covers a larger area than the unit position. g. Requests smoke support from other units (if organic systems will not accomplish the task).		
3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determines what available target and acquisition systems are effective in smoke and uses them. b. Requests target acquisition and guidance systems that are effective in smoke.		
* 4. Unit leader requests resupply of smoke munitions when required. a. Requests smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributes smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.44-A30H)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensure individuals cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags; roll sleeves down; and wear gloves. b. Cover equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water containers or place them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Use shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensure continuous monitoring is maintained using available NBC detection and identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. a. Maintain total dose information, using available total dose instruments. b. Ensure exposure is minimized while commander determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible. c. Calculate optimum time of exit. d. Send NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required, using secure means when possible. * 3. Unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Uses guidance from higher headquarters based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Plans for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.44-A30H)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack: a. Without warning: (1) Close eyes immediately. (2) Drop to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drop down inside the vehicle). (3) Keep head and face down and helmet on. (4) Remain prone until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling. b. With warning: (1) Identify the best available shelter (fighting positions/inside shelters). (2) Move to the shelter. (3) Take actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Keep clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times. (5) Protect eyes and minimize exposed skin areas.		
* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. a. Reestablish chain of command. b. Reestablish communications. c. Submit NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters. d. Treat casualties. e. Report casualties. f. Evacuate casualties. g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implement continuous monitoring. i. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters. j. Initiate area damage control plan as required. k. Extinguish all fires before they spread out of control.		
* 3. Leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.		
4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Perform operators maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Soldiers improve cover (if applicable). a. Choose dense covering material. b. Cover in-depth. c. Provide strong support. d. Cover as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD
	081-831-1005	PERFORM FIRST AID TO PREVENT OR CONTROL SHOCK
	081-831-1007	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1033	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
	081-831-1034	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.44-A30H)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from MOPP4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decon, unit decon equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decon, a decon unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decon support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates their individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from NBC contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment, and minimizes contamination on soldiers per FM 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels per FM 3-5 and/or reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Contaminated unit leader determines extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Receives input from staff and/or subordinate leaders. b. Establishes priorities of decontamination.		
2. Contaminated unit submits request for decontamination to higher headquarters. Request should, as a minimum, include— a. Designation of the contaminated unit. b. Location of the contaminated unit. c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles/equipment, by type, that are contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (patient decon station, recovery assets, unit decon team, et cetera).		
3. Contaminated unit coordinates with higher headquarters. a. Obtains permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support. b. Selects linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decon equipment crew, decon squad/platoon, et cetera). c. Coordinates with supporting elements. d. Requests replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinates with supporting units to determine if they will also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialist(s) select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring the site selected provides the following: a. Adequate overhead concealment. b. Good drainage. c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes). d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown. e. Area enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange sites).		
5. Contaminated unit coordinates for operational decon support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decon unit). a. Requests operational decon support. b. Notifies higher headquarters of the area for the operational decon. c. Establishes communications with the decon unit. d. Ensures that the decon unit knows the locations of the linkup and the selected decon site.		
6. Contaminated unit and supporting units move to decon site. a. Meet at linkup point as coordinated. b. Contaminated unit provides security at both linkup point and decon site.		
7. Units prepare for operational decontamination. a. Set up the decon site. (1) Supporting decon unit crew sets up vehicle washdown site. (2) Contaminated unit sets up MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site. (3) The remainder of the unit prepares its equipment for decon. b. Conduct preparatory actions in pre-decon area. (1) Vehicle crews (except for operators) dismount unless they have an operational overpressure system AND an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews remove mud and camouflage from vehicles. The contaminated unit must provide personnel to do this if crews do not dismount. (3) Separate vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensure vehicle operators are briefed (include use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval). (b) Ensure vehicles are buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings are closed or covered). (4) Move vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle washdown site. (5) Move dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.		
* 8. NCOIC of the decon unit supervises operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that— a. Vehicle operators maintain the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station. b. Vehicles are washed properly. (1) Start at top and work down. (2) Spray hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitor water consumption. c. Vehicles move to assembly area after vehicle washdown. d. Vehicle operators move to the MOPP gear exchange site and conduct MOPP gear exchange.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. Contaminated unit conducts MOPP gear exchange. a. Prepares equipment decontamination station (with STB dry mix). b. Briefs MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Places decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material). d. Exchanges MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moves soldiers to the assembly area after completion of MOPP gear exchange. Note: Ensure the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding. Note: The supporting decon unit will clean and mark the site, and report the area of contamination (using NBC 4 Report) to higher headquarters. *10. Units' leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination. *11. Contaminated unit leader reports to higher headquarters. a. Completion and location of decon site (vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange sites). b. Requests permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard is detected. c. Determines the adequacy of decontamination and adjusts MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher headquarters). 12. Continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M256-SERIES CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3002	CONDUCT UNMASKING PROCEDURES
	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS
	031-507-3003	SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION
	071-329-1004	DETERMINE THE ELEVATION OF A POINT ON THE GROUND USING A MAP
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	850-001-4001	INTEGRATE RISK MANAGEMENT IN PLATOON MISSION

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (03-3-C225.44-A30H)
(FM 3-19) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in an active chemical environment and needs to determine if chemical agent hazards exist in a particular location. The unit has operational chemical detection equipment/supplies available. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit detects, identifies, marks, and reports the location of all chemical agents in the assigned reconnaissance area to its higher headquarters. The unit marks and records the location of contamination within 100 meters accuracy of actual location.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues guidance to subordinate leaders.		
* 2. The unit leader begins preparations for the chemical reconnaissance. a. Performs map reconnaissance of the route and specific area for reconnaissance. b. Determines reconnaissance technique to use. c. Plans for decontamination (if necessary) following the reconnaissance operation. d. Coordinates for fire support. e. Issues OPORD/FRAGO to subordinate leaders. f. Briefs personnel on proper reporting and recording procedures.		
3. The unit prepares for chemical reconnaissance mission. a. Prepares vehicles/equipment for chemical reconnaissance. b. Performs precombat checks on vehicles/equipment. c. Loads chemical agent detection equipment. d. Removes all external gear/equipment not needed or required for the mission. e. Attaches M9 paper to troops and vehicles. f. Covers exposed equipment with plastic or canvas. g. Covers internal area of vehicle for team members who dismount vehicle. h. Assumes appropriate MOPP level for the reconnaissance mission. Note: In order to limit performance degradation, the unit leader should conduct MOPP analysis to determine the MOPP level appropriate for movement to the reconnaissance start point and to determine the point when the unit assumes MOPP4.		
4. The unit conducts the chemical reconnaissance. a. Uses proper movement techniques (according to METT-T). b. Uses chemical agent detection equipment and chemical agent detection paper to locate contamination around and within the designated area. c. Maintains 25- to 100-meter spacing between vehicles across the axis of advance, depending on the terrain. d. Stops vehicles at selected intervals or in areas with visual indications of a chemical attack to check for contamination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Checks the area for visual indications of chemical contamination such as— (1) Dead/discolored vegetation. (2) Discolored soil. (3) Unusual liquid droplets. (4) Oily film on water. (5) Craters caused by bursting munitions. (6) Absence of insect life. (7) Dead animals/birds. f. Marks contaminated area according to OPORD/SOP instructions.		
* 5. The unit leader submits an NBC 4 (Chemical) report of findings to higher headquarters.		
6. The unit conducts recovery operations. a. Checks soldiers and vehicles for contamination. b. Segregates contaminated soldiers and equipment (if necessary). c. Coordinates for operational decontamination (if necessary). d. Moves to the preselected decontamination site (if necessary). e. Conducts operational decontamination (if necessary). f. Coordinates for reconstitution to include thorough decontamination (if applicable).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1006	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN DRINKING FROM YOUR CANTEEN WHILE WEARING YOUR PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M256-SERIES CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3002	CONDUCT UNMASKING PROCEDURES

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.44-A30H)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route and cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. a. Uses NBC 5 (Chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route. b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtains route clearance and approval. 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumes MOPP4 for crossing the area. b. Ensures all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps. c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material. e. Attaches M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducts dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible. 4. The unit exits the contaminated area. a. Checks for casualties. b. Reports casualties (if applicable). c. Conducts necessary decontamination. d. Continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1020	DETECT CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M9 DETECTOR PAPER
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1033	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN USING THE M291 SKIN DECONTAMINATING KIT (SDK)
	031-503-1034	DECONTAMINATE YOUR INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT USING THE M295 INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT DECONTAMINATION KIT (IEDK)
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M256-SERIES CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT
	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	551-721-3359	PREPARE A STRIP MAP
	551-721-1359	DRIVE A VEHICLE IN A CONVOY

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Security of a Command Post (19-3-2205.44-A30H)
(FM 19-4) (FM 100-15) (FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Levels I and II threat forces are attempting to disrupt and destroy critical command and control elements. The platoon has been given the mission to conduct security for a command post. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon secures the command post to preclude breeches of security and without degradation of command post operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader plans to provide security to the command post on a 24-hour basis. a. Initiates troop-leading procedures. b. Issues a warning order to subordinate leaders and other key personnel. c. Reviews existing security measures. d. Conducts a reconnaissance of the routes to the CP and areas around the CP under all conditions. e. Coordinates with the headquarters commander and G3 concerning security, CP locations, and movement routes. f. Ensures a screen line made up of LPs/OPs and security patrols encircles the CP to provide early warning of hostile elements. The screen line should be able to detect, repel, or if necessary, destroy hostile elements. g. Coordinates with higher headquarters for threat analysis, access control procedures, badges, and other security requirements. h. Establishes a challenge and password/duress system. i. Makes contingency plan for augmentation forces. When using band assets, informs the bandmaster and band members of the tactical situation and security plan. Also includes them in any rehearsals. The band may be used to— (1) Assist in perimeter defense of the CP. (2) Provide access control on the road to the CP. (3) Operate the dismount point for the CP. (4) Augment or relieve security personnel on the defensive perimeter. j. During planning, receives on-hand status reports from the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, or both. k. Reviews platoon requirements based on the tactical plan. l. Considers a field or hard-site location. m. Makes security plans according to METT-TC and OCOKA with the assistance of the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, and other key personnel. n. Assists the platoon sergeant in planning and coordinating the platoon's combat service support effort. o. Develops a casualty evacuation plan. p. Briefs security plan to battery commander. q. Issues oral OPORD to the platoon.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*2. Unit leader coordinates for support requirements. a. Organizes the platoon CP according to the unit SOP, leader's guidance, and METT-TC factors. b. Trains the crews for crew-served weapons. c. Employs crews according to the unit SOP, leader's guidance, and METT-TC factors. d. Coordinates for administrative and logistical support. (1) Receives squad leader's requests for rations, water, and ammunition. (2) Works with the battery first sergeant to request resupply. (3) Forwards the platoon casualty reports. (4) Maintains platoon strength information. (5) Receives replacements. e. Coordinates for medical evacuation. f. Monitors the morale, discipline, and health of platoon members. g. Coordinates for morale support. h. Develops load plans. i. Spot-checks personnel and equipment. j. Coordinates with the CP operations sergeant for any security and administrative support. k. Requests augmentation for roving patrols within the perimeter, as needed. l. Takes charge of task-organized elements in the platoon during tactical operations to include the following: (1) Quartering parties. (2) Security patrols during night attacks. (3) Support elements in attacks and raids. (4) Security forces during withdrawals.		
*3. Squad leader receives mission. a. Establishes priority of work for the teams in the squad. b. Maintains accountability of soldiers and equipment. c. Inspects the condition of the soldier's weapons, clothing, and equipment. d. Directs the maintenance of the squad's weapons and equipment. e. Assigns missions to teams. f. Supervises execution of the CP security plan. g. Manages the logistical and administrative needs of the squad. (1) Requests and issues ammunition, water, rations, and special equipment. (2) Ensures that material and supplies are distributed to the squad members. (3) Ensures supplies and equipment are internally cross-leveled within the squad. (4) Keeps the platoon sergeant/leader informed on squad supply status and squad requirements. h. Trains the squad on the individual and collective tasks required to perform the security mission. i. Controls maneuver of the squad and its rate and distribution of fire. j. Updates the platoon leader on mission status.		
4. Squads/teams conduct the CP security mission. a. Place TCPs near the intersection of the MSR and the access road to the CP to ensure— (1) Traffic continues to flow freely and traffic congestion is avoided. (2) Teams screen traffic entering access road. (3) Teams provide route security to include straggler and refugee control as needed. (4) Communication is maintained with platoon headquarters. (5) Teams maintain proper cover and concealment. b. Operate the dismount point near the entrance to the CP. (1) Teams screen all persons desiring entry to the CP area. Only authorized personnel or vehicles are allowed to enter.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Teams direct vehicles into authorized parking areas and control dispersion of vehicles. (3) Teams enforce noise, light, and litter discipline. (4) Teams maintain communications with platoon headquarters. c. Control entrance to the CP. (1) Teams use access posters provided by the G2 to permit entry. (2) Teams maintain primary and alternate means of communications—FM and land line. (3) Teams enforce noise, light, and litter discipline. 5. Squads/teams provide personal security for the commander. a. Ensure three soldiers (at a minimum) are on call for an internal QRF. b. Ensure one soldier is assigned to guard the commander TOC. *6. Platoon leader coordinates with base for augmentation of a security element from within the base camp to conduct LZ/DZ security. *7. Platoon leader monitors mission progress. a. Checks the work of the platoon sergeant and squad leaders. b. Receives status reports from platoon sergeant and squad leaders. c. Reports status to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON
	113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER
	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	441-066-4005	ESTABLISH OPERATIONS OF A COMMAND POST

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)

CONDITIONS: The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

STANDARDS: 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE (19-OPFOR-1012)

CONDITIONS: The OPFOR employs a large number of radio direction finder sets and monitors enemy forces for loose communications security practices.

STANDARDS: 1. Locate the positions of the enemy command, intelligence, and logistics radio nets. 2. Forward locations to OPFOR HQ. 3. Use jamming signals against enemy radio receivers. 4. Monitor enemy radio nets for intelligence information.

TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

CONDITIONS: The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

STANDARDS: 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Plan Air Defense (SHORAD) (44-1-3534.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64) (FM 44-100) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit is given the mission to provide air defense to support the corps/division/TF critical assets during defensive or offensive operations, in any weather condition, day or night. Leaders know the critical aspects of the plan. All unit personnel are present. TOE equipment is on-hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Using the one-third/two-thirds rule, the unit prepares a synchronized air defense plan while the platoon prepares to deploy. Unit leader allows units time for troop-leading procedures by applying the one-third/two-thirds rule. Unit leader briefs the commander on the tactical situation. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 is increased. Note: The evaluator will start evaluation with a warning order and brief the battery commander on the battalion mission (defensive or offensive).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. Unit leader receives the mission (a list of the unit's air defense priorities) to use when planning air defense. Must obtain— a. Units' scheme of maneuver objectives and overall intent. b. Maps of the operational area. c. Routes of march or axis of advance. d. Battle formations to use. e. Control or coordinating points. f. Threat estimate.		
2. The Corps Air Defense Element (CADE) and the assistant division air defense officer (ADADO) both notify their battalions of the new mission. a. Begin estimates and ADA annexes to the corps and division OPORD. b. If situation permits, the battalion commander should move to the planning cell, usually the corps or division main TOC. c. Begin mission analysis.		
3. TOC/CP issues warning orders. a. Shows the echelons missions. b. Explains TF organizing (when required). c. Gives the general area of the missions. d. Gives the time(s) of the mission(s).		
Note: Offensive Operations. 4. Using the DST, METT-TC analysis, and commander's intent, identifies air defense priorities for each enemy course of action and phase of the battle.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Priorities include maneuver units defending against the main effort, command, control, and communications nodes, reserve forces, and critical assets. In conjunction with the reinforced S3, plan for adding depth to the battlefield by defending critical assets (for example, DSA and DTOC) in the rear area allowing the reinforced unit to mass fires on divisional maneuver priorities. a. Reorganizes and consolidates assets as priorities change. b. In conjunction with reinforced S3, task-organizes available air defense forces. 5. Makes a synchronized air defense plan that achieves mass through the establishment of decisive force ratios at the critical time and place on the battlefield. Sufficient forces will be allocated so platoons and batteries will adhere to the employment guidelines of mutual support and balanced fires. a. Designs plan to defend forward maneuver units against enemy attack helicopter regiments and critical assets in division and rear areas against frontal aviation assets. b. Synchronizes air defense protection with HIMAD. Identifies additional resource requirements to higher headquarters. c. Coordinates early warning with HIMAD, supported, and subordinate ADA units. d. Coordinates airspace with Army aviation and Air Force assets in conjunction with the air defense plan. e. Provides ADA protection for the force. 6. TOC/CP sustains air defense operations. (Base task 44-1-1045). a. Establishes support relationships with TF. b. Uses TF as primary means for logistical support. Note: Defensive Operations. 7. Performs thorough IPB refining higher headquarters IPB and, if appropriate, coordinates IPB analysis with S2 of reinforced unit. a. Conducts battlefield area evaluation, focusing on corps rear area and reinforced division areas. b. Conducts terrain and weather analysis. c. Conducts threat evaluation. Focuses evaluation on enemy ground scheme of maneuver and air-associated capabilities, with specific emphasis on fixed-wing employment and air assault landing zones. d. Conducts threat integration with emphasis on relating threat air to enemy ground courses of action. e. Identifies ground and air NAI and assists S3 in preparing DST and establishing TAI. 8. Using the DST, METT-TC analysis, and commander's intent, identifies air defense priorities for each enemy course of action and phase of battle. a. In conjunction with reinforced S3, plans to add depth to the battlefield by defending critical assets (for example DSA and DTOC) in rear areas. b. Integrates HIMAD and SHORAD assets. c. Plans for the reinforced unit to mass fires in defense of maneuver priorities. 9. Makes synchronized air defense plan that achieves mass through the establishment of decisive force ratios at the critical time and place on the battlefield. Sufficient forces will be allocated so platoons and batteries adhere to the employment guidelines of mutual support and balanced fires. a. In conjunction with the reinforced S3, task-organizes air defense forces to defend division air defense priorities. Priorities include maneuver units or critical assets. b. Synchronizes air defense protection with HIMAD. c. Secures and defends unit positions. d. Identifies additional resource requirements to higher headquarters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Coordinates early warning with HIMAD, supported, and subordinate ADA units. f. Coordinates airspace with Army aviation and Air Force elements in conjunction with the air defense plan. 10. Performs thorough IPB refining of higher headquarters IPB and coordinating IPB analysis with elements passing through choke point. a. Conducts battlefield area evaluation, focusing on the corps present and future area of operation and interest. b. Conducts terrain and weather analysis. c. Conducts threat evaluation, analyzing threat attack helicopter and fixed-wing capabilities and predicting enemy course of action based on friendly ground scheme of maneuver. d. Conducts threat integration relating enemy air courses to ground courses of action. Analyzes location of choke points to predict time and location for the commitment of attack helicopter regiment and fixed-wing aircraft. e. Prepares ground and air NAIs, and assists the S3 in identifying TAI and in preparing the DST. 11. Uses DST, METT-TC analysis, and commander's intent to identify air defense priorities. a. Analyzes elements passing through each choke point. b. Analyzes elements for each enemy course of action and phase of the battle. c. Develops third-dimensional IPB. 12. Makes synchronized air defense plan that achieves mass through the establishment of decisive force ratios at the critical time and place on the battlefield. Sufficient forces will be allocated to allow platoons and batteries to adhere to employment guidelines of mutual support and balanced fires. a. Develops execution matrix based on DST for elements passing through the choke points. b. Uses DST in relation to the location of choke points to determine primary air threats. The plan will focus on defeating the attack helicopter regiment against forward maneuver units and fixed-wing aircraft in rear battle areas. c. Synchronizes air defense protection with HIMAD. Identifies additional resource requirements to higher headquarters. d. Coordinates early warning with HIMAD, supported, and subordinate ADA units. e. Coordinates airspace with Army aviation and Air Force elements in conjunction with air defense plan. 13. Performs thorough IPB refining of higher headquarters IPB, and, if appropriate, coordinates IPB analysis with battalion S2 of reinforced unit. a. Conducts battlefield area evaluation, focusing on corps rear area and reinforced division areas. b. Conducts terrain and weather analysis. c. Conducts threat evaluation. Focuses evaluation on enemy ground scheme of maneuver and associated air capabilities, with specific emphasis on fixed-wing aircraft employment and air assault landing zones. d. Conducts threat integration with emphasis on relating threat air to enemy ground courses of action. e. Identifies ground and air NAIs and assists S3 in preparing DST and establishing TAI. 14. Using the DST, METT-TC analysis, and the commander's intent, recommends air defense priorities for each enemy course of action and phase of the battle. a. Makes synchronized air defense plan that achieves mass through the establishment of decisive force ratios at the critical time and place on the battlefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Allocates sufficient forces so batteries and platoons will adhere to the employment guidelines of mutual support and balanced fires. c. Synchronizes coverage with HIMAD. Identifies additional resource requirements to higher headquarters. d. Coordinates early warning dissemination with HIMAD. e. Coordinates airspace with Army aviation and Air Force assets according to the air defense plan. 15. TOC/CP establishes liaison with HIMAD source. a. Collocates ADC team with HIMAD. b. ADC broadcasts early warning, ADWs, WCSs, and ACOs. c. TOC/CP rebroadcasts early warning and HIMAD data on ADCN via AM radio. d. ADC team keeps HIMAD battalion current on SHORAD locations and statuses. 16. TOC/CP develops early warning scheme of maneuver. a. Analyzes HIMAD radar coverage diagram. Considers HIMAD dead space when developing early warning systems plan. b. Develops an air defense R&S plan, establishing responsibilities for early warning systems (HIMAD) to cover specific NAI and TAI. c. When reinforcing divisional air defense units, coordinates early warning systems coverage to provide depth to the division sector. This allows reinforced unit to concentrate coverage forward to support the division's main effort. 17. TOC/CP maintains continuous and reliable early warning. a. Plan contains redundancy. b. Rehearses early warning plan at all levels. c. ABOC integrates HIMAD and early warning systems coverage and assigns distinctive track designators. d. Uses DST to include early warning in air defense execution matrix. 18. TOC/CP establishes plans to disseminate early warning to TF. a. Establishes liaison officers to supported units. b. Passes early warning information to and from the ABOC. c. CPs broadcast alert and cueing information to platoons and firing units (for example, “Dynamite, Dynamite from the east”). d. Liaison officers broadcast common jargon over supported unit command net. 19. TOC/CP coordinates and synchronizes the air defense plan with the brigade/division TOC. a. Writes the air defense annex to the division or ADA brigade OPORD. b. Gives the current unit battle roster to the brigade S1. c. Coordinates medical support for the battalion with the brigade MSB. d. Coordinates physical security measures for the battalion CP with the brigade TOC (challenge and password, protective fires, EPW, and NDP). e. Coordinates logistical support for the batteries with the brigade MSB. f. Coordinates with brigade communications and electronics officer (crypto security material). 20. TOC/CP writes and distributes the battery OPORD to the platoon. The OPORD contains— a. Situation. Information on enemy and friendly forces, weather, and terrain; mission; and planned actions of the defended units and other ADA units in the area. b. Mission(s). Mission(s) of the battalion, batteries, and task-organized elements, when required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Execution. The battalion commander's tactical plan to do the mission(s) and the tasks each battery must do. d. Service Support. Administrative instructions for ammunition resupply; casualty evacuation and reporting; rations issue; and maintenance, EPW, and common supply issues. e. Command and Signal. Instructions and initial WCS, ADW, SOI, CP locations, call signs, and location of early warning systems, sensor platoon, and MFCS center. *21. Unit leader briefs subordinates and TOC/CP personnel. This ensures that— a. The OPORD is understood (backbrief). b. Unit has maps of the operational area. c. Unit leader understands the TF commander's intent.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Coordinate Air Defense (SHORAD) (44-1-5137.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit is in a tactical position with a supported unit. The ADCOORD element is attached to the nearest TOC/CP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit TOC/CP is kept current on the status and location of its supporting ADA units. The ADCOORD element receives and passes messages between the ADA commander and the TF TOC/CP. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The ADCOORD element, together with S2/G2 element, develops target priorities for the commander. a. Assesses the air and missile threat and commander's intent. b. Develops OCA priorities. c. Develops DCA priorities. d. Develops the air order of battle. e. Coordinates with the FSCOORD element the integration of OCA priorities into the division target plan. f. Develops and recommends TBM target list.		
* 2. The ADCOORD element recommends the use of combined arms for air defense. a. Recommends passive AD measures. b. Recommends active AD measures. c. Recommends combined arms AD measures. d. Disseminates early warning information.		
* 3. The ADCOORD element develops and recommends the air defense plan to the regiment staff. a. Develops the AD annex to the regiment operations plan. b. Integrates HIMAD and SHORAD assets. c. Ensures vertical and horizontal integration of air defense coverage throughout the battlefield. d. Integrates the GBS early warning plan into the AD annex.		
* 4. The ADCOORD element coordinates with the aviation element for the use of regiment airspace. a. Integrates the use of regiment airspace. b. Coordinates A^2C^2 operations. c. Coordinates for future SHORAD operations.		
* 5. The ADCOORD element coordinates with regiment IEW element. - Coordinates to ensure surveillance and intelligence assets are tasked to locate air support targets such as FARPs, missile and UAV launch systems, electronic warfare systems, logistics facilities, and C^2 nodes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The ADCOORD element coordinates other ADA activities with the supported unit's staff. a. Keeps the supported commander informed of the ADA unit status. b. Coordinates ADA reports within the battery CP. c. Receives and passes messages between the supported unit's TOC and other attached elements. d. Responds to the changing needs on the battlefield by advising the supported unit commander on SHORAD capabilities and limitations. e. Establishes and maintains communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-5005	RECEIVE A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6005	WRITE A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6006	READ A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-573-4003	ENCODE AND DECODE MESSAGE USING KTC-600(*) TACTICAL OPERATIONS CODE
	113-587-2001	OPERATE RADIO SET AN/PRC-77 OR AN/PRC-25
	113-587-2064	OPERATE RADIO SET AN/VRC-12 OR AN/VRC-47 WITH TSEC/KY-57
	113-587-2070	OPERATE SINCGARS SINGLE CHANNEL (SC)
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	441-066-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AND FRIENDLY AIRCRAFT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.44-A30H)
(FM 44-44) (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) have been operating in the general area. Platoon weapon control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: OPFOR aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position. a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide personnel and equipment to limit its vulnerability. Air situational awareness is achieved by unit monitoring the SHTUs. b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms. d. Disperses vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack. e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Mans OPs (daytime or nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). g. Establishes a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if equipment is available and operational.		
* 2. Unit leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy. a. Convoy commander briefs all unit personnel. b. Camouflages vehicles and equipment before moving out. c. Selects column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain. d. Places crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (avenues of approach). e. Assigns soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees. f. Visually identifies threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). g. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters. h. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.		
3. Unit personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing. a. Maintain vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Stagger vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assign air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintain coverage until convoy completes the movement. d. Visually identify threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). e. Report all aircraft actions to higher headquarters. f. Establish vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	051-191-1501	PERFORM INDIVIDUAL CAMOUFLAGE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-066-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AND FRIENDLY AIRCRAFT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: CONDUCT AN AIR ATTACK ON ENEMY FORCES, STATIC SITE, OR MOVING FORCES (44-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITIONS: OPFOR units have located sensor team asset positions and MSRs in the forward area. OPFOR units are initiating an air/ground attack.

STANDARDS: 1. Locate the selected target (static site or moving forces). 2. Initiate an air attack on the selected target. 3. Make two or more attack runs. 4. Inflict heavy damage to the selected target. 5. Lose no aircraft or ground troops. 6. Delay moving force for more than one hour.

TASK: CONDUCT AIR RECONNAISSANCE (44-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITIONS: OPFOR headquarters requires intelligence on locations and identifications of team sections. An aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make visual inspection of forward area and selected MSRs.

STANDARDS: 1. Locate sensor team positions in forward area (command and control, static assets, and MSRs). 2. Photograph selected assets in area of interest. 3. Make visual checks to support photographs. 4. Do not engage enemy forces.

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Take Active Combined Arms AD Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms
(44-1-C221.44-A30H)
(FM 44-8) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). Unit is in a tactical position. WCS is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit destroys or forces the attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit. a. Give air attack alarm. b. Occupy defensive positions. c. Search assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identify and report presence of aerial platforms in the area and send PIR to higher headquarters. Note: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and tactical situation. Unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act. DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation. e. Leader makes engagement decision. f. Unit engages the aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns). Note: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position. g. Engagement causes no fratricide. h. Reloads weapons following engagement. i. Sends PIRs to higher headquarters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

Notes:

- Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.
- Select aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters.
- Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.
- Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.
- Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results.

TYPE AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT
Jet/Cruise Missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose
Jet/Cruise Missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose
Jet/Cruise Missile	Directly at you	Slightly above aerial platform nose
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of nose
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above helicopter/UAV body

j. Evaluate situation and move unit position as directed by the unit commander.

* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.
   a. Give air attack alarm.
   b. Disperse vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continue to move unit.
   c. Move vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismount and prepare to engage the aircraft or increase dispersion.
   d. Engage nonattacking aircraft only as directed.
   e. Visually identify threat aerial platforms.
   f. Report all aerial platforms actions to higher headquarters.
   g. Senior leader orders the unit to engage.
   h. Engages the aerial platforms with all available small arms.
   i. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.

* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking stationary unit.
   a. Give air attack alarm.
   b. All available personnel immediately engage attacking aerial platforms per TSOP.
   c. Reload weapons following the engagement.
   d. Personnel assigned OPs continue to scan their assigned sectors.
   e. Report any aircraft action to higher headquarters.
   f. Report casualties to higher headquarters.
   g. Evaluate situation and move unit position as directed by tactical situation or TSOP.

* 4. Unit leader or NCOs directs small air defense measures during convoy movement.
   a. Alerts vehicle commanders of impending attack.
   b. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road, if possible). Turns to covered, concealed position if terrain permits.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Maintains vehicle intervals or increases interval or dispersion. Uses evasive driving techniques. d. Dismounts and takes up firing positions. e. Prepares personnel to fire on orders of the senior individual present or automatically returns fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft is attacking. f. Identifies the aerial platforms. g. Engages the aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns). h. Reloads weapons following the attack. i. Reports the attack and submits PIRs to higher headquarters. j. Reports casualties to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-066-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AND FRIENDLY AIRCRAFT
	441-067-1004	ENGAGE TARGET WITH THE STINGER WEAPON
	441-092-1014	ENGAGE HOSTILE TARGET WITH THE AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM (MISSILE/GUN)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Air Defense Operations (SHORAD) (44-2-7008.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64) (FM 44-44) (FM 44-8)
(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is given the mission to provide air defense for a TF conducting combat operations in any weather condition and MOPP level, day or night. All platoon personnel are present. TOE equipment is on hand and operational. Enemy air threat is according to OPORD Intelligence Annex and intelligence summaries. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Occupation of position is accomplished within the time limits of the OPORD. The platoon destroys or wards off all aircraft attacking the TF.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader issues a warning order. a. Mission(s) for the platoon. b. Time of the mission. c. General area in which the mission(s) will be done.		
* 2. Squad leader briefs his gunner and inspects his system. a. Maintenance has been completed on all TOE equipment. b. Maintenance on the system is completed. c. Gunner is preparing for the mission. d. IFF equipment has been programmed.		
3. The squad gets the platoon OPORD from the platoon leader or the platoon sergeant. The squad leader takes the following actions: a. Reviews the situation by reading the OPORD. b. Reads and reviews the mission of the squad for changes since receiving the warning order. c. Makes a tentative plan based on the platoon leader's concept of execution to include service support. d. Extracts command and signal instructions from the OPORD. Posts applicable information on the MSCS map and plotting case. e. Briefs his gunner.		
* 4. Squad leader gets movement warning order. a. Does a map reconnaissance of the mission. b. Marks bounding positions on the map according to TF plan for movement. c. Marks tentative overwatch positions on the map according to TF plan for movement. d. Marks platoon CP on map. e. Marks ground-based sensor locations on the map. f. Marks other important data on the map.		
* 5. Squad leader executes the movement order and briefs his gunner. a. New mission of the squad.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Location of the new area. c. Start point and time. d. Release point and time. e. Operational time at new site. 6. Squad prepares for march order. a. When necessary, the squad prepares for water fording operations. b. Squad leader coordinates with platoon CP upon arrival at designated start point. 7. Squad occupies stationary position and provides air defense until TF moves. a. Maintains air surveillance. b. Monitors EWBN. * 8. Squad leader directs emplacement of Avenger. a. Squad will emplace (stationary) and prepare for action. b. Squad performs missile or machine-gun rearm procedures. c. Adjusts position as needed. d. Aligns Avenger on assigned PTL. e. Uses passive air defense measures. f. Ensures position has good natural concealment and access to roads. g. Ensures position has good observation and fields of fire. 9. Squad moves with the TF while providing air defense. a. Uses planned bounds or overwatch positions with the TF. b. Squad leader selects alternate positions if the primary position has been targeted by OPFOR or to bring direct fire on OPFOR ground targets, if necessary. c. Monitors EWBN. d. Plots early warning on MSCS map. e. Marks and maintains status reports on MSCS map and plotting case. f. Sends status reports to platoon CP, as required. g. Performs target engagement. h. Engages and reports pop-up targets to the platoon CP. *10. Squad leader conducts continuous operations. a. Establishes periods for maintenance. b. Supervises equipment recovery or salvage operations. c. Establishes NBC defensive measures. d. Performs emergency destruction of equipment. e. Distributes newly issued equipment. f. Briefs replacement personnel. g. Requests ammunition resupply. h. Establishes sleep plan and combat position rotation. i. Submits personnel and equipment status reports. j. Reports OPFOR PIR and target engagement reports.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER
	441-066-2005	PROGRAM IFF INTERROGATOR, AN/PPX-3A OR 3B (STINGER), USING THE KIR-1C/TSEC COMPUTER AND KOI-18/TSEC TAPE READER OR ANCD
	441-066-2017	CONDUCT A MAP RECONNAISSANCE
	441-066-3104	SUPERVISE PMCS ON THE IFF PROGRAMMER/BATTERY CHARGER
	441-066-3110	SUPERVISE OPERATOR PMCS ON THE KIR-1C/TSEC COMPUTER, ANCD, AND KOI-18 TSEC TAPE READER
	441-066-3111	PERFORM OPERATOR PMCS ON KIR-1C/TSEC COMPUTER ANCD, AND KOI-18 TSEC TAPE READER
	441-066-3112	SUPERVISE PROGRAMMING IFF INTERROGATOR, AN/PPX-3A OR 3B (STINGER), USING THE KIR-1C/TSEC COMPUTER ANCD, AND KOI-18/TSEC TAPE READER OR ANCD
	441-067-1008	PERFORM CRITICAL WEAPON CHECKS ON THE STINGER WEAPON
	441-092-1002	PERFORM PMCS ON THE AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM
	441-092-1009	PERFORM DRIVER DUTIES DURING MARCH ORDER
	441-092-1010	PERFORM GUNNER DUTIES DURING MARCH ORDER
	441-092-1011	PERFORM DRIVER DUTIES DURING EMPLACEMENT
	441-092-1012	PERFORM GUNNER DUTIES DURING EMPLACEMENT
	441-092-1013	PERFORM AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM SEARCH PROCEDURES
	441-092-2006	SUPERVISE PMCS ON AN AVENGER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (71-3-C232.44-A30H)
(AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 19-30)
(FM 20-3) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ EW measures and air and ground reconnaissance units. The enemy can use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The element prevents the enemy from learning any EEFI. The element prevents the enemy from surprising its main body. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Element leader implements OPSEC protective measures. (01-5700.02-0001, 03-9003.03-0001) a. Ensures OPSEC measures are properly implemented. b. Ensures OPSEC is integrated in all operations and activities. c. Maintains awareness of all activities that are OPSEC sensitive.		
* 2. Leaders check or perform information security measures. (01-5700.02-0001) a. Control information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable). c. Conduct alert, deployment preparation, and loading to minimize detection. d. Ensure maps contain only minimum essential information. e. Inspect and give briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitize all planning areas and positions before departure.		
3. The element performs camouflage discipline. (051-191-1501) a. Uses natural concealment and natural camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation. b. Moves on covered and concealed routes. c. Covers all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick. d. Covers or removes all vehicle markings.		
4. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles and crew-served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. a. Ensures foliage is not stripped near positions. b. Camouflages earth berms. c. Ensures that camouflage nets (if used) are hung properly. d. Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads, where possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Erases tracks leading into the positions. f. Makes sure vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift. g. Replaces and replenishes camouflage as needed. h. Avoids movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. 5. The element's NCS enforces communications procedures. a. Enforces SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). b. Enforces approved RATELO procedures. c. Enforces communications security procedures (short transmissions, lowest power settings possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence, as directed). 6. The element employs communications security. a. Uses SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). b. Uses approved RATELO procedures. c. Uses communications security procedures (short transmissions, lowest power setting possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence, as directed). d. Employs ECCM procedures for operations during jamming. e. Uses messenger and wire to the maximum extent. f. Uses visual signals according to the unit's SOP. 7. The battery employs physical security measures. (071-331-0815, 071-331-0801) a. Establishes observation posts. b. Uses counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Employs stand-to procedures. d. Emplaces mines and obstacles. e. Ties in with adjacent units (coordination and fire). f. Uses challenge and password. g. Limits access into the element area. h. Safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Employs air guards. j. Uses noise and light discipline. k. Uses proper litter discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	051-191-1501	PERFORM INDIVIDUAL CAMOUFLAGE
	071-326-0511	REACT TO FLARES
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	181-906-1505	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS ACCORDING TO THE LAW OF WAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON
	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
	113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-5005	RECEIVE A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6005	WRITE A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6006	READ A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-066-3103	PERFORM SQUAD, TEAM, OR SECTION CONTINUOUS OPERATIONS
	441-066-4005	ESTABLISH OPERATIONS OF A COMMAND POST

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Treat Casualties (08-2-0003.44-A30H)

(FM 21-11)	(AR 350-41)	(AR 600-8-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 8-10)
(FM 8-10-1)	(FM 8-10-6)	(FM 8-10-7)
(FM 8-285)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of combat lifesavers. Unit personnel are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment, and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid treatment until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. Higher HQ TSOP and OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Note: This task should not be trained in MOPP4 except when treating NBC casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for casualties per FM 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limits the type of treatment provided.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties. a. Develop treatment plan. b. Monitor treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure all casualties are treated. c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties. d. Report casualties, as required. e. Coordinate replenishment of Class VIII supplies with higher headquarters logistics element according to the TSOP. f. Direct distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TSOP. g. Enforce QC procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.		
2. Unit personnel survey casualties. a. Check for responsiveness. b. Check for breathing. c. Check for bleeding. d. Check for head injury. e. Check for shock. f. Check for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures. g. Check for burns.		
3. Unit personnel administer life-saving first aid treatment. a. Clear all objects from throat of casualty.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Use jaw thrust method to open airway if cervical spine injury is suspected. c. Perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation to restore casualty's breathing according to CPR procedures. 4. Unit personnel control hemorrhage. a. Apply dressing and bandages. b. Apply manual direct pressure to wound. c. Elevate extremities. d. Apply pressure dressing to wound. e. Apply tourniquet as last resort. 5. Unit personnel dress wounds. a. Apply occlusive dressing to an open chest wound, if possible. b. Apply dressing to an open abdominal wound. c. Apply dressing to an open head wound. 6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures. a. Employ available materials to splint injury. b. Splint fracture in position found. c. Restrict movement of extremities. d. Check circulation for impairment. 7. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns. a. Extinguish thermal burn agent(s). b. Remove chemical burn agent(s). c. Eliminate electrical burn source. d. Uncover burn unless stuck to clothing or a chemical environment exists. e. Apply field dressing, if appropriate. 8. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries. a. Administer treatment for heat injuries. b. Administer first aid for frostbite. 9. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties. a. Take immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others per FM 8-285. b. Protect casualty from further contamination. c. Administer nerve agent antidote per FM 8-285. d. Administer CANA, if required. e. Decontaminate casualty per FM 8-285, if necessary. 10. Unit personnel prevent shock. a. Position casualty in the correct antishock position per FM 21-11. b. Loosen clothing and equipment. c. Prevent casualty from chilling or overheating. d. Calm casualty by reassuring him. 11. Unit combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment. a. Evaluate casualty for condition and type treatment needed. b. Measure casualty's vital signs. c. Insert oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty. d. Apply a splint to a fractured limb. e. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties. f. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock. g. Identify environmental injuries. h. Treat environmental injuries. i. Manage BF casualties.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	031-503-1007	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN AND PERSONAL EQUIPMENT USING AN M258A1 DECONTAMINATION KIT
	031-503-1033	DECONTAMINATE YOUR SKIN USING THE M291 SKIN DECONTAMINATING KIT (SDK)
	081-831-1003	PERFORM FIRST AID TO CLEAR AN OBJECT STUCK IN THE THROAT OF A CONSCIOUS CASUALTY
	081-831-1005	PERFORM FIRST AID TO PREVENT OR CONTROL SHOCK
	081-831-1007	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1008	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES
	081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1026	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN CHEST WOUND
	081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	081-831-1033	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
	081-831-1034	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
	081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	081-831-0102	SUPERVISE UNIT PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND FIELD SANITATION PROCEDURES

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Transport Casualties (08-2-C316.44-A30H)

(FM 8-10-6)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 385-10)
(AR 600-8-1)	(FM 100-5)	(FM 12-6)
(FM 21-11)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)
(FM 57-38)	(FM 8-10)	(FM 8-10-1)
(FM 8-285)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded EPW casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The TSOP and higher HQ OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as tactical situation permits according to the TSOP, OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and FM 8-10-6. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to transport casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders supervise transport of casualties. a. Monitor casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and TSOP. b. Identify casualty collection points. c. Identify transport requirements. d. Supervise preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinate transport of casualties from unit area with higher HQ PERS element per FM 8-10-6 and TSOP. f. Coordinate security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and higher HQ OPS element. g. Disseminate transport information to unit personnel. h. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ PERS element per FM 12-6 and TSOP.		
2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport. a. Provide first aid treatment to casualties. Note: See Task 08-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures. b. Report casualties, as required. c. Collect classified documents such as SOI/SSI, maps, overlays, and key lists. d. Secure custody of organizational equipment per TSOP. e. Forward casualty feeder reports to unit headquarters per TSOP.		
3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries. a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury. b. Transport casualty without causing further injury per FM 8-10-6.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries. a. Identify litter team(s). b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required. c. Secure casualty on litter. d. Transport casualty without causing further injury per FM 8-10-6.		
5. Unit personnel transport casualties to an MTF using available vehicles. a. Load maximum number of casualties per FM 8-10-6. b. Secure casualties in vehicle. c. Transport casualties without causing further injury per FM 8-10-6.		
* 6. Commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation. a. Transmit request per FM 8-10-6, OPORD, and TSOP. b. Select landing site which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and takeoff per FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38. c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival. d. Supervise security of landing site per the TSOP.		
7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance. a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques per FM 8-10-6. b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew. c. Load casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employ safety procedures per AR 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and TSOP. e. Employ environmental protection procedures per AR 200-1 and TSOP.		
8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties. a. Assume MOPP4. b. Mark contaminated casualties per the TSOP. c. Notify supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location. d. Transport casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protect casualties from further contamination during transport.		
9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. a. Maintain security of EPW casualties per TSOP. b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to evacuation. c. Transport EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva convention and the TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	081-831-1040	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A ONE-MAN CARRY
	081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER
	181-906-1505	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS ACCORDING TO THE LAW OF WAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	191-379-4450	SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL
	301-348-6001	PROTECT CLASSIFIED INFORMATION AND MATERIAL

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP	08-2-0003.44-A30H	TREAT CASUALTIES

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.44-A30H)
(FM 22-51) (FM 6-22.5) (FM 8-10)
(FM 8-10-1) (FM 8-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: CHS operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher HQ operations. The unit's sleep plan and SOPs to manage BF soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The unit leader has directed that battlefield stress management procedures be implemented. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Note: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some MOS-specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders perform stress prevention leader actions. a. Issue warning orders, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level. b. Provide soldiers an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Brief leader's intention to all unit personnel. d. Speak positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Institute an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.		
* 2. Unit leaders implement sleep plan. a. Provide a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjust the sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation. c. Enforce the sleep plan according to the TSOP.		
* 3. Unit Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. a. Alternate cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotate unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assign two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.		
* 4. Unit leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques. a. Integrate new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assist soldiers in resolving home front problems. c. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provide instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment. e. Conduct after-action debriefings. f. Schedule a critical event debriefing after any especially traumatic event per FM 22-51. g. Conduct unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.		
* 5. Unit leaders implement stress control techniques. a. Implement a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assign soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Direct personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Refer soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to supporting MTF for evaluation. e. Reintegrate RTD soldiers into their specific element.		
6. Unit personnel employ stress prevention measures. a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Comply with commander's sleep plan. c. Identify other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provide immediate buddy aid support. e. Report signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to immediate supervisor. f. Accept new unit members immediately. g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participate in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	850-001-4001	INTEGRATE RISK MANAGEMENT IN PLATOON MISSION
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5502	ISSUE A FRAGMENTARY ORDER
	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER
	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATIONS ORDER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.44-A30H)

(FM 21-10)	(AR 200-1)	(AR 385-10)
(AR 40-5)	(FM 10-52)	(FM 21-10-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 8-10)
(FM 8-10-1)	(FM 8-10-7)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist, which require field sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The unit leader has selected and trained the unit FST. The CHS plan, TSOP, and higher HQ OPORD are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Field sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TSOP, OPORD, and FM 21-10. FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TSOP, FM 21-10, and commander's guidance. At MOPP level 4, only minimum essential field sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader directs field sanitation measures. a. Direct field sanitation activities to counter the medical threat. b. Monitor field sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10 and TSOP. c. Enforce individual field sanitation measures. d. Request assistance from the supporting PVNTMED element for sanitation problems that are beyond the expertise of the unit's FST per TSOP and OPORD. e. Correct field sanitation deficiencies. f. Report field sanitation deficiencies which cannot be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforce safety procedures per AR 385-10 and TSOP. h. Enforce environmental protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and TSOP. 2. FST supervises unit field sanitation measures. a. Maintain field sanitation basic load per AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. b. Supervise distribution of field sanitation basic load items per AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. c. Test unit water supply for required chlorine residual level per FM 21-10-1 and TSOP. d. Inspect water containers and trailers per FM 21-10-1 and TSOP. e. Monitor personnel to ensure use of personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bednet repellent) and rodents per applicable directives and commander's guidance. f. Conduct rodents surveys, as required. g. Monitor personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures. h. Monitor waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and TSOP, as required. i. Inspect latrines and urinals per FM 21-10-1 and TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Inspect liquid and solid waste disposal facilities to ensure compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and TSOP. k. Inspect handwashing devices per FM 21-10-1 and TSOP. l. Inspect transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and TSOP. m. Provide advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforce safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and TSOP. o. Enforce environmental protection procedures per AR 200-1 and TSOP. 3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures. a. Maintain prescribed load of water purification materials per AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and TSOP. b. Prepare nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and TSOP. c. Consume only water designated as potable. d. Maintain latrines and handwashing facilities per FM 21-10 and TSOP. e. Employ preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employ personal hygiene measures. g. Employ preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bednet repellent. h. Report field sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employ safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and TSOP. j. Employ environmental protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	081-831-1007	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1008	PERFORM FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES
	081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0102	SUPERVISE UNIT PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND FIELD SANITATION PROCEDURES
	850-001-3001	CONTROL MISSION SAFETY HAZARDS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: 2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS
BATTERY HQS

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (19-3-3106.44-A30H)
(FM 19-40) (FM 27-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPW according to unit SOP and the five Ss and T (search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches EPW. a. Removes all weapons and documents with intelligence value. b. Returns personal items of no military intelligence value such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Gives prisoners receipts for personal property taken. 2. The element segregates EPW. a. Segregates EPW by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology when possible. b. Turns wounded EPW over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels. 3. The element silences EPW. a. Prevents EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevents EPW from planning escape. c. Does not talk in front of EPW except to issue orders and maintain discipline. 4. The element safeguards EPW. a. Removes EPW from dangers of the battlefield. b. Does not allow anyone to abuse EPW. c. Treats EPW humanely. 5. The element tags the EPW with DA Form 5976. a. Annotates the following information: (1) Date and time of capture. (2) Capturing unit. (3) Grid coordinates of capture. (4) Circumstance of capture. b. Attaches Part A to EPW. c. Retains Part B for unit records. d. Attaches Part C to property. 6. The element speeds EPW to the rear. a. Notifies higher headquarters that the company has EPW. b. Removes EPW rearward to the nearest MP collecting point. c. Exploits intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	181-906-1505	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS ACCORDING TO THE LAW OF WAR
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	191-379-4450	SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Perform Unit Level Maintenance (43-2-C322.44-A30H)
(AR 385-10) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)
(AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA Pamphlet 738-750)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battery is tactically deployed and is currently engaged in combat. Unit maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative equipment. The unit maintenance area is established. Required tools, repair parts, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing PMCS on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The battery TSOP is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit vehicles and equipment are maintained in an operational ready status according to DA standards. Time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader/motor officer directs unit maintenance program. (01-4965.90-0001) a. Monitors implementation of unit maintenance program. b. Monitors unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Identifies current or anticipated maintenance problems. d. Coordinates resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters. e. Requests control substitution approval from higher headquarters. f. Approves emergency field repairs. g. Prepares materiel condition status reports. h. Conducts periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure safety program is enforced.		
* 2. Platoon/section leaders supervise operator maintenance. (04-4966.90-0010, 01-4965.90-0001, 03-5101.00-0283) a. Monitor performance of PMCS. b. Inspect vehicle, weapons, and equipment. c. Coordinate maintenance assistance with the unit maintenance section. d. Monitor equipment repair parts status. e. Request approval for emergency field repairs. f. Maintain maintenance status of vehicle, weapons, and equipment. g. Provide input for materiel condition status report.		
3. Platoon personnel perform operator maintenance. a. Perform PMCS. b. Notify supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability. c. Perform emergency field repairs. d. Assist unit maintenance personnel with repairs and services.		
* 4. Motor sergeant supervises unit maintenance personnel. a. Organizes unit maintenance personnel to perform unit maintenance activities. b. Supervises the Army maintenance management system (TAMMS) and prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Supervises repair and inspection procedures to ensure they are done safely and according to appropriate references. d. Requests approval for BDAR from battery commander when established repair procedures cannot be used. e. Supervises BDAR procedures to ensure procedures are done per appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requests approval to use controlled exchange from company commander when required repair parts are not available. g. Supervises use of controlled exchange for compliance with commander's guidance. h. Supervises recovery operations to ensure correct recovery and safety procedures are used. i. Supervises Army oil analysis program (AOAP) procedures to ensure testing of oil samples is done at required intervals. j. Coordinates maintenance status with platoon/section leaders. k. Provides unit maintenance status to company commander.		
5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. a. Diagnose faults on inoperative equipment. b. Request required repair parts to complete the repair from PLL clerk. c. Repair equipment per applicable TM(s). d. Request approval for BDAR through the motor sergeant when established repair procedures cannot be used. e. Perform BDAR per appropriate BDAR manual. f. Request approval for controlled exchange through motor sergeant when required repair parts are not available. g. Perform controlled exchange. h. Perform final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Record completed work on appropriate document(s). j. Employ safety procedures to minimize accidents.		
6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance. a. Identify category of repair. b. Correct unit level deficiencies. c. Prepare required documentation for submission to support maintenance. d. Evacuate equipment to support maintenance. e. Verify completion of repairs. f. Pick up equipment upon completion of repairs.		
7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative support functions. a. Maintain PLL. b. Request repair parts for unit equipment. c. Perform required AOAP tasks. d. Turn in unserviceable repairable items. e. Maintain document registers. f. Maintain maintenance control records. g. Maintain technical publications on all organic equipment. h. Maintain tools and test equipment. i. Maintain power generation equipment.		
8. Maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verify location of disabled vehicles. b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicles. c. Inspect vehicles to determine required parts. d. Repair vehicles on site. e. Evacuate nonrepairable vehicles to unit maintenance area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. Maintenance personnel react to battle damaged vehicle (recoverable) within a hostile area. a. Request covering fire. b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle. c. Tow vehicle to a concealed location. d. Remove casualties from vehicle. e. Perform self-aid/buddy aid. f. Request medical assistance, if required. g. Evacuate casualties. h. Perform battle damage assessment. i. Repair vehicle, if possible. j. Recover nonrepairable vehicle.		
10. Maintenance personnel react to battle damaged vehicle (unrecoverable) within a hostile area. a. Request direct and supporting fire. b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle. c. Remove casualties from vehicle. d. Treat casualties. e. Request medical assistance, if required. f. Evacuate casualties. g. Request disposition of unrecoverable vehicle from company commander. h. Conduct salvage operations. i. Prepare vehicle for destruction. j. Destroy vehicle on order from commander or designated representative.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK
	031-503-1026	MAINTAIN YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
	071-312-3025	MAINTAIN AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2013	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM174-SERIES RADIACMETER

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-2020	USE AND PERFORM OPERATOR MAINTENANCE ON THE IM93 OR IM147 DOSIMETER AND PP1578-SERIES CHARGER
	031-503-2022	USE AND MAINTAIN THE AN/VDR-2 RADIAC SET
	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-587-0058	PERFORM OPERATOR'S TROUBLESHOOTING ON SINCGARS
	441-067-1008	PERFORM CRITICAL WEAPON CHECKS ON THE STINGER WEAPON
	441-067-1009	PERFORM PMCS ON THE STINGER WEAPON
	441-092-1001	TROUBLESHOOT THE AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM
	441-092-1002	PERFORM PMCS ON THE AVENGER WEAPON SYSTEM
	441-092-1018	PERFORM OPERATOR'S MAINTENANCE ON THE M3P MACHINE GUN
	441-092-1025	TROUBLESHOOT THE M3P MACHINE GUN
	441-092-2006	SUPERVISE PMCS ON AN AVENGER
	441-096-1023	PERFORM PMCS ON THE SHTU
	441-096-1040	PERFORM OPERATOR PMCS ON EPLRS RADIO SET AN/VSQ-2(V)2
	441-096-1123	PERFORM EMERGENCY PROCEDURES ON THE PLGR (GPS)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct LOGPAC Activities (44-4-2282.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64) (FM 10-27-4) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is DS to the task force. Platoon headquarters is participating in LOGPAC with supported forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Receive and distribute Stinger missiles, argon bottles, small arms munitions, and personnel replacements to squads, as required. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Supported force LOGPAC operations at the supported force level are formed by batteries and moved forward under the control of the support battery commander who normally organizes a convoy for movement of all LOGPACs under his control. In emergencies, he dispatches unit LOGPACs individually. The convoy may contain additional vehicles, such as maintenance vehicles with Class IX to move to the unit maintenance collection point (UMCP), or additional ammunition and fuel for the combat trains. Any time the Avenger battery is DS, the basic principles of LOGPAC operations by the supported unit will apply.		
* 1. Unit leader coordinates LOGPAC activities with supported force. a. Makes sure the battery has the items required to accomplish the mission. b. Makes sure LOGPAC is formed at the field trains. c. Makes sure LOGPAC is moved forward to the logistics release point (LRP). d. Takes control of battery LOGPAC when LOGPAC elements reach the LRP. e. Notifies the battery XO immediately if peculiar items are not included in the supported force LOGPAC.		
* 2. Unit leader makes sure that the following supplies, equipment and personnel replacements peculiar to the battery are included in the supported force LOGPAC plan: a. Stinger missiles. b. Evacuation of battery personnel. c. 14S MOS personnel replacements. d. .50 cal, 7.62, 5.56 ammunition. e. Spare argon bottles.		
3. Platoon coordinates maintenance activities with supported force. a. Coordinates maintenance and evacuation of damage vehicles with the supported force or the ADA battery which is closest. b. Brief battery personnel on location of UMCP.		
* 4. Unit leader notifies the supported force commander of support status. - When supported force has not responded for maintenance support in sufficient time.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Receive External Sling-Load Resupply (55-2-C325.44-A30H)
(FM 10-450-5) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Platoon is alerted for incoming resupply by external sling-load. S2/S3 section (if immediate resupply) or S4 section (if routine resupply) notifies the platoon of the anticipated type and amount of supplies or equipment and the scheduled delivery time. The platoon has personnel trained in sling-load procedures. Helicopter(s) deliver supplies and/or equipment to a designated landing zone (LZ) near the battery position. The LZ is secured. Slings and allied materials may or may not be returned with delivery helicopter(s) to unit of origin. Battery TSOP and battalion OPORD are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supplies and/or equipment are derigged and cleared from LZ. Time required to perform sling-load operation increases when conducting this task in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit commander and element leaders develop supplies and/or equipment receipt plan. a. Verify quantity and type of supplies and/or equipment and delivery time with S2/S3 or S4 Section. b. Coordinate LZ security and location with S2/S3 Section. c. Appoint LZ officer or NCO. d. Coordinate additional motor transport and special equipment requirements with S4 Section. e. Assign appropriate number and composition of ground crew(s) based on tactical situation, type and quantity of cargo, and size of LZ. f. Request required protective equipment from unit supply facility. g. Brief LZ officer or NCO on tactical situation, size of operation, preparation and clearance of LZ, protective equipment, and safety precautions. h. Disseminate plan to all company elements.		
* 2. Landing zone leader supervises external sling-load resupply operations. a. Identifies wind direction and speed. b. Transmits wind direction and speed to incoming aircraft as requested. c. Identifies aircraft approach direction. d. Prepares LZ emergency security and reaction plan. e. Identifies ground crew(s) rendezvous or rally point(s). f. Secures all required LZ marking and personnel protection equipment. g. Organizes ground crew team(s). h. Briefs ground crew team(s) on tactical situation, size of operation, preparation and clearance of LZ, emergency procedures, protective equipment, and safety precautions. i. Assigns individual team member duties. j. Supervises derigging operations. k. Supervises loading of supplies and/or equipment on motor transport vehicles. l. Supervises LZ clearance activities. m. Enforces safety procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Ground crew(s) perform LZ preparation activities. a. Remove all obstructions from LZ. b. Mark all unremovable obstructions. c. Clear all loose debris from the LZ. d. Set up all required visual markers. e. Position vehicles and other special equipment out of the LZ. f. Rehearse hand or arm and other visual signals.		
4. Ground crew(s) derig external sling-load supplies or equipment. a. Wear hearing and eye protection. b. Employ safety precautions. c. Employ visual signals to guide helicopter to derigging point. d. Ground static discharge probe to cargo hook. e. Release load from helicopter. f. Provide "affirmative" signal to pilot for lift-off when load is unhooked and clear of helicopter.		
5. Ground crew(s) prepare slings and/or nets for air transport retrograde. a. Remove cargo sling and/or nets from supplies or equipment. b. Secure all slings and/or nets in a cargo net. c. Employ proper hand signals to guide helicopter into position. d. Ground static discharge probe to net rings. e. Connect sling equipment to helicopter cargo hook. f. Provide "affirmative" signal to pilot for lift-off when net is secure and all personnel are clear.		
6. Ground crew(s) and vehicle operator(s) clear LZ. a. Load all supplies or equipment on vehicle(s). b. Load all slings and/or nets and markers on vehicle(s). c. Remove all loose debris from LZ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-2-C302.44-A30H)
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battery is tactically deployed. Platoon personnel must establish single-channel networks. Platoon operators were briefed on the SOI extract. The OPFOR is conducting EW and has the capability to locate stations with direction-finding equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Radio operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when operating in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. a. Secure radio in the mount. b. Connect audio accessories. c. Install antenna. d. Perform all preoperational and operational checks on the radio set.		
2. Radio operators make initial entry into the net. a. Obtain appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequency from current SOI. b. Contact NCS and request permission to enter the radio net. c. Authenticate, when challenged by the NCS. d. Enter net only after NCS has given permission.		
3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. a. Recognize ECM tactics. b. Check for accidental or unintentional interference. c. Check for intentional interference.		
4. Radio operators initiate prescribed ECCM procedures. a. Disconnect antenna. b. Identify type of noise. c. Tune the receiver above or below the normal frequency. d. Identify jamming signals. e. Report interference received to the commander. f. Employ antijamming measures. g. Continue to operate on current frequency.		
5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. a. Use COMSEC equipment, if available (TSEC/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Set COMSEC equipment for the proper code. c. Safeguard COMSEC equipment and materiel when COMSEC is used. d. Use only approved radiotelephone procedures. e. Use challenge and reply authentications, as required by the SOI.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Communicate using approved codes and brevity list. Encode and decode grid coordinates using the current SOI. g. Keep the length and number of transmissions to a minimum. h. Use the lowest power setting required to communicate with the desired stations. i. Use the correct call signs and frequencies. j. Observe periods of radio silence. k. Adhere to net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-5005	RECEIVE A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6005	WRITE A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6006	READ A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	301-348-6001	PROTECT CLASSIFIED INFORMATION AND MATERIAL
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	113-573-4003	ENCODE AND DECODE MESSAGE USING KTC-600(*) TACTICAL OPERATIONS CODE
	113-587-0058	PERFORM OPERATOR'S TROUBLESHOOTING ON SINCGARS
	113-587-2070	OPERATE SINCGARS SINGLE CHANNEL (SC)
	113-587-2075	OPERATE SINCGARS DATA DEVICES
	441-092-1035	OPERATE INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SET AN/VIC-1

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Operate/Maintain/Troubleshoot Platform With Appliqué, Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver (PLGR) and SINCGARS System Improvement Program (SIP) (11-5-0201.44-A30H)
(FM 11-50) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 25-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has been deployed. The platform/communications team has been directed to support the maneuver command post with communications. Team has all required hardware and software plus ancillary equipment needed to provide support. SOI/SSI and COMSEC materials are on hand and current. General condition applies. (See the Training Matrix in Chapter 2, paragraph 2-2.) Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Crew/operator successfully initializes and is operating the radios and platform components in a planned network within 30 minutes. Crew/operator demonstrates knowledge of currently accepted troubleshooting procedures. Appliqué and radio set problems are located and minor repairs are completed within 5 minutes. For problems that are outside the capability of the crew/operator, crew/operator calls unit maintenance within 8 to 10 minutes of problem/fault discovery. Performance in MOPP4 increases the time required to complete the task.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
SAFETY: Follow all appropriate safety guidelines and regulations. Note: Sequence of start-up procedures may vary, depending on platform configuration and software being used.		
1. The crew/operator initializes the Appliqué. a. Performs visual inspection. (1) Checks for loose hardware, dents, cracks, or scratches on computer and keyboard. (2) Checks for cracks and scratches on monitor glass. (3) Checks for broken or missing keys on keyboard. (4) Checks cables for frayed or broken wires. (5) Checks connectors for cracked shells, missing parts, and corrosion. b. Performs mechanical inspection. (1) Presses keys to ensure that they can be depressed and do not stick. (2) Manipulates trackball to ensure it is operable. (3) Makes sure air vents are not blocked. c. Turns power switch to ON. d. Performs EPLRS start-up procedures according to user's guide for software version being employed. e. Checks communication status according to user's guide and software version being used.		
2. The crew/operator installs the PLGR. a. Inventories and inspects components. b. Performs PMCS on PLGR. c. Installs memory battery (if not already installed), then installs primary batteries. d. Connects EXT antenna cable to PLGR antenna connector. e. Connects PLGR/Appliqué interface cable to PLGR interface port connector.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Connects EXT power cable to PLGR power connector. g. Ensures all connectors are properly connected and cables are routed to prevent damage. h. Powers up vehicle. i. Turns PLGR on. j. Observes PLGR self-test and complies with user guide for software version being employed. k. Sets up PLGR, if required. l. Enters current position, if required. m. Loads COMSEC variables, if required. 3. The crew/operator uses the ANCD to load COMSEC variables into the PLGR. 4. The crew/operator uses the ANCD to load COMSEC variables into the SINCGARS SIP. 5. The crew/operator/maintainer implements Appliqué troubleshooting procedures according to user's guide for software version being used. 6. The crew/operator/maintainer implements troubleshooting procedures for SINCGARS SIP according to operator's guide for the radio.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-587-0058	PERFORM OPERATOR'S TROUBLESHOOTING ON SINCGARS
	441-096-1040	PERFORM OPERATOR PMCS ON EPLRS RADIO SET AN/VSQ-2(V)2
	441-096-1120	PERFORM PMCS ON THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1121	PERFORM SETUP/INITIALIZATION OF THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1122	OPERATE THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1123	PERFORM EMERGENCY PROCEDURES ON THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1125	CONNECT PLGR (GPS) TO EXTERNAL DEVICES
	441-096-1126	LOAD CRYPTOKEYS INTO THE PLGR (GPS)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Operate/Maintain/Troubleshoot Platform With Appliqué, Precision Lightweight GPS Receiver (PLGR) and SINCGARS System Improvement Program (SIP) (11-5-0202.44-A30H)

(FM 11-32)	(FM 11-50)	(AR 385-55)
(FM 20-3)	(FM 24-19)	(FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1)	(FM 25-100)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit has been deployed. Platform/communications team has been directed to support the maneuver command post with communications. Team has all required hardware and software plus ancillary equipment needed to provide support. SOI/SSI and COMSEC materials are on hand and current. General condition applies. (See the Training Matrix in Chapter 2, paragraph 2-2.) Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Crew/operator successfully initializes and is operating the radios and platform components in a planned network within 30 minutes. Crew/operator demonstrates knowledge of currently accepted troubleshooting procedures. Appliqué and radio set problems are located and minor repairs are completed with 5 minutes. For problems that are outside the capability of the crew/operator, crew/operator calls unit maintenance within 8 to 10 minutes of problem/fault discovery. Performance in MOPP4 increases the time required to complete the task.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
SAFETY NOTE: Follow all appropriate safety guidelines and regulations.		
1. The crew/operator initializes the EPLRS VHSIC according to user's guide.		
2. The crew/operator initializes the SINCGARS SIP radio according to the user's guide/technical manual.		
3. The crew/operator leads variables in SINCGARS SIP by accomplishing the following steps according to the technical manual: a. The crew/operator enters assigned FM radio net. b. The crew/operator initializes the SINCGARS SIP for single-channel operations according to the technical manual. c. The crew/operator uses the ANCD to load COMSEC variables into the EPLRS VHSIC according to the user's guide/technical manual.		
4. The crew/operator initializes the Appliqué according to the user's guide for the software version being employed. a. Performs visual inspection. (1) Checks for loose hardware, dents, cracks, or scratches on computer and keyboard. (2) Checks for cracks and scratches on monitor glass. (3) Checks for broken or missing keys on keyboard. (4) Checks cables for frayed or broken wires. (5) Checks connectors for cracked shells, missing parts, and corrosion.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Performs mechanical inspection. (1) Presses keys to ensure they can be depressed and do not stick. (2) Manipulates trackball to ensure it is operable. (3) Makes sure air vents are not blocked. c. Turns power switch to ON. d. Performs user log on procedures according to the user's guide. e. Checks communication status of other elements. f. Checks communication status of other elements. 5. The crew/operator installs the PLGR. a. Inventories and inspects components. b. Performs PMCS on PLGR. c. Installs memory battery (if not already installed), then installs primary batteries. d. Connects EXT antenna cable to PLGR antenna connector. e. Connects PLGR/Appliqué interface cable to PLGR interface port connector. f. Connects EXT power cable to PLGR power connector. g. Ensures all connectors are properly connected and cables are routed to prevent damage. h. Powers up vehicle. i. Turns PLGR on. j. Conducts PLGR self-test according to the user's guide/technical manual. k. Waits for PLGR to acquire satellites according to the user's guide/technical manual. l. Sets up PLGR, if required. m. Enters current position, if required. n. Loads COMSEC variable, if required. 6. The crew/operator uses the ANCD to load COMSEC variables into the PLGR according to the user's guide/technical manual. 7. The crew/operator uses the ANCD to load COMSEC variables into the SINCGARS SIP according to the user's guide. 8. If the system fails to operate, the crew/operator/maintainer implements Appliqué troubleshooting procedures according to the user's guide. 9. The crew/operator implements EPLRS VHSIC troubleshooting procedures according to the user's guide/technical manual, as required. 10. The crew/operator/maintainer implements troubleshooting procedures for SINCGARS SIP according to the user's guide/technical manual. 11. The crew/operator/maintainer implements SINCGARS SIP troubleshooting procedures as required. a. Attempts to enter assigned FM net. If unable to make voice contact during send/receive voice radio check, decides next logical step is to verify that PLGR time and SINCGARS SIP times are identical. b. If it is determined that the times do not match, enters PLGR time and initializes SINCGARS SIP. c. Attempts to conduct send/receive voice radio check in the assigned FM net. If unable to make voice contact, initiates late net entry procedures using the SINCGARS SIP radio. d. Attempts to conduct send/receive voice radio check in the signed FM net. If unable to make voice contact, enters time from a known good SINCGARS SIP operating in the same FM net instead of entering PLGR time. e. Attempts to conduct send/receive voice radio check in the assigned FM net. If unable to make voice contact, notifies unit maintenance personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-587-0058	PERFORM OPERATOR'S TROUBLESHOOTING ON SINCGARS
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	113-587-2075	OPERATE SINCGARS DATA DEVICES
	441-096-1040	PERFORM OPERATOR PMCS ON EPLRS RADIO SET AN/VSQ-2(V)2
	441-096-1120	PERFORM PMCS ON THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1121	PERFORM SETUP/INITIALIZATION OF THE PLGR (GPS)
	441-096-1125	CONNECT PLGR (GPS) TO EXTERNAL DEVICES
	441-096-1126	LOAD CRYPTOKEYS INTO THE PLGR (GPS)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Install/Operate/Maintain a Single-Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.44-A30H)

(FM 11-32) (TM 11-5985-357-13) (FM 20-3)
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-33)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team was briefed and has signal operating instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI) extracts, appropriate loading devices with keys, radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. (See the Training Matrix in Chapter 2, paragraph 2-2.). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINCGARS radio sets are operational per the TSOP and the operation plan/operation order. Performance in MOPP4 will increase time required to complete the task.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
SAFETY NOTE: Follow all appropriate safety guidelines and regulations. ALL COMMANDERS WHO USE THE OE-254/RC-292 ANTENNA FAMILIES MUST COMPLY WITH THE FOLLOWING: • Follow procedures outlined in TM 11-5985-357-13. • Wear protective equipment when erecting and assembling the antennas (eye goggles, helmet, gloves). • Install element tip protectors (NSN: 5985-00-930-7223) or other suitable tip caps including locally modified tennis balls, rubber tubing, and so forth, over the tip ends as authorized in CECOM Message 031800Z Feb 89. • Prohibit unauthorized modifications (that is, use of camouflage poles in lieu of the OE-254 mast sections). • Prohibit raising the antenna past its maximum safe height. • Inspect all OE-254 antenna masts for the presence of "through" cracks around the notch before and after erection. Remove all antenna masts from service if "through" cracks of ¼ inch or greater are identified and order replacement for these masts. • Use a gin pole or other suitable device to lift the antenna feed cone with elements off the ground to erect. This will reduce the stress placed on the antenna during erection. • Do not place an individual under the antenna during the erection process. • Remove one upper mast section as authorized by CECOM Message 102800Z Mar 90.		
* 1. Supervisor checks radios for completeness and operability. a. Checks that vehicular and/or manpack systems are assembled correctly. WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use. b. Checks that operator has logged amp-hours (manpack only). c. Checks to ensure preoperational PMCS is completed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
CAUTION: RF energy is present near the antenna during transmission. Maintain at least 30 inches between vehicular antenna and personnel during transmission. An antenna tip cap must be in place on the antenna. Tie down the antenna so the distance from the ground to the tip cap is 7 feet or more. * 2. The supervisor selects the site. a. Selects primary and alternate locations within the general site. b. Establishes/maintains camouflage discipline. c. Checks that location provides effective use of terrain in an electronic warfare environment. d. Checks that location avoids interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference. 3. Net members perform pre-mission checks for SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Perform before-operation PMCS. b. Load transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MX-18290 (non-ICOM) only. c. Load hopset, using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Load traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13. 4. Net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performs preoperational PMCS. b. Loads TSK and hopset using MX-10579 or MX-18290 (non-ICOM only). c. Loads hopset, using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loads TEK using KYK-13. e. Loads FH sync time per SOI/SSI. f. Loads CUE frequency. g. Directs alternate NCS to load CUE frequency as required. h. Changes net identification per SOI/SSI. 5. NCS opens net. a. Issues net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel. b. Issues electronic counter-countermeasures remote fill (ERF) instructions and sends ERF. c. Sets channel switch to hopset channel and issues net call. d. Opens net. e. Resets channel switch to MAN and calls missing net members. f. Repeats cold start. g. Sets FCTN switch to SQ ON. 6. Net members enter net. a. Respond in correct sequence to net call. b. Store ERF, set channel switch to hopset channel and FCTN switch to SQ ON. c. Respond in correct sequence to net call. d. Missed ERF or heard no communications on hopset channel, reset channel switch to MAN and FCTN switch to LO. e. Respond in sequence to NCS call. 7. Net members perform late net entry (LNE), CUE, and ERF method. a. Perform pre-mission checks for FH cold start (PM 3). b. Load CUE frequency per SOI/SSI. c. Initiate CUE call. d. Report into net. e. Switch to MAN channel and conduct cold-start net opening (PM 5).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. Net members use proper radio procedures. a. Keep the length and number of transmissions to a minimum. b. Use the lowest power setting required to communicate. c. Use authorized call signs and frequencies. d. Observe periods of radio listening silence. e. Operate on a random schedule. f. Adhere to net discipline.		
9. The team members recognize different types of interference. a. Check RT SIG display when not transmitting if the display is constantly or intermittently higher than 1; disconnect antenna to determine if interference is internal or external. b. Notify maintenance of internal symptoms. c. Initiate electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) for external symptoms.		
10. The team members initiate ECCM actions. a. Continue to operate. b. Do not disclose in the clear the effectiveness of the jamming. c. Reduce transmission speed. d. Increase transmitter power. e. Relocate antenna. f. Prepare and forward MIJI FEEDER Voice Template Message Report to supervisor.		
11. The team members extend the range of the radio station. a. Inspect OE-254 for serviceability. b. Install OE-254 antenna (team method). c. Accomplish the transaction from the whip to OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.		
12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site. a. Installs and connects OE-254 antennas. b. Performs preoperational PMCS. c. Loads CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loads CMD NET MAN and CUE frequencies in radio D. e. Loads TSK and TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loads hopset and TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. CUE's LNE using radio D. h. Stores ERF in both radios. i. Changes radio D to RTS MAN and CUE frequencies and RTS net ID. j. Sets radios C and D FCTN switches to RXMT.		
13. Team members initiate net radio interface (NRI) call. a. Call the NRI operator on the NRI hopset channel or initiate a CUE call on the NCI CUE channel as required. b. Switch to NRI MAN channel. c. Establish communications on the NRI hopset channel. d. Establish communications on the NRI hopset channel. e. Identify telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.		
14. The team members maintain SINCGARS radio net. a. Perform PMCS as required. b. Perform fault isolation as required. c. Perform user level maintenance as required. d. Evacuate faulty equipment as required. .		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Complete all necessary entries in maintenance records f. Report all uncorrected deficiencies to immediate supervisor. 15. NCS supervisor closes the net. a. Calls net and issues close down instructions. b. Receives acknowledgement in correct sequence. c. Acknowledges net members. d. Performs after-operation PMCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	113-587-0058	PERFORM OPERATOR'S TROUBLESHOOTING ON SINCGARS
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	113-587-2075	OPERATE SINCGARS DATA DEVICES
	441-092-1035	OPERATE INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SET AN/VIC-1

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Sustain Air Defense Operations (SHORAD) (44-1-1045.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in a tactical position. Platoons are providing air defense of assets. The platoon TOC must conduct sustained operations until mission completion, in any weather condition, day or night. All platoon TOC personnel are present. TOE equipment is on-hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon TOC maintains communications with deployed elements and supported units throughout the mission. The platoon TOC conducts its activities on a 24-hour basis. The platoon TOC staff submits and receives reports within the prescribed time limits of the OPORD. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit TOC/CP staff supervises and manages battery sustained operations. a. S1 supervises the reorganization of the batteries to allow for personnel shortages and receiving replacements according to the commander's intent. b. S2 monitors the intelligence situation and provides the commander and battle staff with INTSUMs. c. S2 monitors OPSEC procedures implemented in all plans and enforces the information security program. d. S2 continuously performs the IPB process and makes recommendations to the TF staff based on his findings. e. S3 continuously synchronizes air defense coverage as the air battle progresses and air defense assets change. f. S3 redistributes equipment to improve the operational readiness of the unit. g. S3 continuously monitors the tactical situation and updates the air defense plan or OPORD as needed. h. S3 issues warning orders, FRAGOs, or verbal orders to support the TF commander's battle intent or changes in air defense priorities. i. S3 reorganizes and consolidates ADA assets as priorities change. j. The electronic warfare officer monitors the TOC/CP and MIJI reports to assess the enemy's ability to use ECM against the battalion and advises the commander and batteries accordingly. k. The NBC cell monitors the NBC situation and advises the commander accordingly. l. S4 element adjusts the logistical plan to react to change in the tactical situation or operation. m. S4 coordinates resupply of batteries with ammunition and all classes of supply. n. CP personnel improve TOC/CP position by using passive air defense measures. o. Unit TOC/CP sections continuously coordinate with BTOC to keep pace with changes on the battlefield affecting their operations. p. TOC/CP section leaders prepare and execute sleep plans and crew rotations so that each crew member receives 4 hours or more sleep during a 24-hour period. q. BMO supervises maintenance, PLL, and POL procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. TOC/CP maintains a journal of events containing the following information: a. WCS (beginning and changes). b. ADW (beginning and changes). c. States of alert (SOA) (beginning and changes). d. Operational reports (battle, personnel, and logistics). e. Changes that affect the battalion's ability to do its mission or changes to mission.		
3. Unit TOC/CP forwards the following reports to higher TOC/CP: a. PRRs. b. NBC reports (as they occur). c. Materiel readiness condition report. d. PIR reported by its subordinate elements. e. Unit status. f. Changes in ADW and EW over the command line.		
* 4. The commander adjusts air defense coverage. a. Maintains continuous coverage over the corps or supported force's axis of movement. b. Adjusts fires to newly identified avenues of approach. c. Covers gaps in the defense caused by fire unit casualties. d. Supports higher headquarters scheme of maneuver. e. Tailors the defense by weapon system according to the air threat. f. Supports special missions or tactical movements. g. Provides ADA protection to the force. h. Prevents avoidable loss of air defense assets due to overwhelming enemy activities. i. Secures and defends unit positions. j. Takes advantage of additional support from corps assets or adjacent units. k. Leads the force.		
5. TOC/CP calls for fire support from FSE per battalion tactical fire support plan. a. Calls for fire support when tactical situation or defense posture of batteries dictates fire support fires. b. Calls for smoke support when required by commander's scheme of maneuver to protect movements. c. Calls for allocated DS fires when in static area defense.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Provide Command and Control (44-1-2187.44-A30H)
(FM 44-43) (FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit CP is collocated with the TF CP. Unit is providing air defense. This task is conducted in any weather condition and MOPP level, day or night. All unit personnel are present. TOE equipment is on hand and operational. Enemy air threat is according to OPORD Intelligence Annex and intelligence summaries. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit maintains command and control with subordinate elements throughout the mission and disseminates or relays early warning. Maintains close coordination with C^3I platoon leader.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leader provides command and control by issuing the following orders: a. Air defense warnings. b. States of readiness. c. Weapon control status. d. States of alert. e. Early warning procedures to squads.		
2. CP personnel maintain the following records and reports: a. Air defense status chart with planned squad locations. b. Unit call sign and frequency. c. Unit state of readiness. d. Unit mission. e. Unit and defended unit's call signs and radio frequencies. f. Unit ammunition and missile status. g. Ground-based sensor locations and radio frequencies. h. Remarks (vehicle, equipment, and personnel shortages affecting the mission).		
3. CP personnel maintain the operation overlay with the following information: a. Locations of friendly units. b. Boundaries. c. Control points. d. Coordination points. e. A^2C^2 overlay, enemy situation, obstacles, and planned fires in AO.		
4. CP personnel maintain a journal of events containing the following information: a. WCS (beginning and changes). b. ADW (beginning and changes). c. Squads' SOR (beginning and changes). d. Operational reports (battle, personnel, and logistics). e. Changes that affect the platoon's ability to do its mission or changes to the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. Leader or his representative make sure that the following reports are submitted to higher headquarters CP: a. Fire unit engagements. b. Requests for small arms and Stinger missile resupply. c. Requests for medical evacuation of wounded or removal of KIA remains. d. PIR submitted by fire units to defended unit's S2. e. Unit SOR.		
* 6. Leaders manage maintenance operations. a. Maintenance of unit equipment. b. Equipment recovery operations. c. NBC defensive operations. d. Unit emergency destruction of equipment operations.		
7. Unit maintains communications links with the ADA battery, early warning sensors, fire units, and TF CP. a. Maintains a unit command net link. b. Maintains a TF command net link. c. Maintains an early warning link with early warning sensors.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-5005	RECEIVE A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6005	WRITE A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (44-2-2294.44-A30H)
(FM 44-44) (FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon receives warning order. Squads are providing air defense for the task force. Task can be accomplished in any weather condition and MOPP level, day or night. All platoon personnel are present. TOE equipment is on hand and operational. Enemy air threat is according to OPORD Intelligence Annex and intelligence summaries. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon leader conducts the eight troop-leading procedures per FM 44-44. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
Note: Depending on the command relationship, the platoon leader may or may not receive an ADA plan from his battery commander. If he does, the battery commander via various means (radio, facsimile (FAX), et cetera may give this plan due to battery dispersion and time available. This plan may be general, depending on information available. * 1. Unit leader receives the mission. (Step 1) a. Conducts initial mission analysis. (1) What is the mission of the battery? (2) What is the commander's intent? (3) What is the battery command relationship? (4) Where are the enemy, his strength, air threat, and his weakness? b. Key NCOs prepare battery personnel for mission. c. Squad leaders start precombat checks (Appendix D, FM 44-43). * 2. Unit leader receives the air defense plan which includes— a. ADA task organization. b. Platoon mission. c. Current situation (enemy, friendly). d. Supported force commander's intent. * 3. Unit leader issues the warning order. (Step 2) a. Briefs the platoon on the upcoming mission. b. Briefs when and where a detailed OPORD will be issued. * 4. Unit leader makes a tentative plan. (Step 3) a. Reviews the information collected during mission analysis. b. Conducts backward planning, based on available time. The result of this planning may include the following events: (1) Mission execution time (line of departure or defend not later than time). (2) OPORD issue time. (3) Movement time between positions. (4) Emplacement time. (The initial time line must be disseminated to the battery as soon as possible and be updated as necessary.)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. Unit leader develops the ADA plan. - Plans air defense. * 6. Unit leader initiates necessary platoon movement. (Step 4) a. Begins movement as soon as possible following the warning order. (Often movement occurs simultaneously with the initiating of the planning process.) b. Platoon leader arrives at the supported force TOC and begins the planning process with the staff. c. PSG conducts resupply operations for the platoon. d. Platoon links up with the supported force. * 7. Unit leader conducts reconnaissance. (Step 5) - Conducts RSOP. * 8. Unit leader completes the plan. (Step 6) a. Adjusts the plan based on the IPB, METT-TC, and commander's guidance. b. Adds details to the air defense annex to the supported force OPORD. c. Finalizes the battery OPORD. * 9. Unit leader issues the platoon OPORD. (Step 7) a. Makes sure that each soldier knows how to accomplish the mission. b. Makes sure soldiers know how they fit into the plan. c. Makes sure squad leaders provide backbrief, including orientation on terrain, sand tables, or terrain models (if time is available for their construction). *10. Unit leader rehearses, executes, and supervises the plan. (Step 8) a. Conducts rehearsals prior to each mission on the ground, over the radio, or on sand tables or terrain boards. b. Makes sure that every soldier attends the rehearsals. c. Uses battery execution matrix. d. Leaves rehearsals with a clear understanding of its mission and where it fits into the supported force commander scheme of maneuver. e. Makes sure that vehicles are in correct position for the move. f. Makes sure radio nets are monitored. g. Makes sure the platoon is ready to execute according to its matrix.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY
	301-348-6001	PROTECT CLASSIFIED INFORMATION AND MATERIAL

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Establish the Platoon CP (44-4-2160.44-A30H)
(FM 44-44) (FM 100-5) (FM 101-5)
(FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Platoon receives a tactical mission as part of the task force during military operations under any weather condition. All platoon personnel are present and all TOE equipment is operational. Threat forces have air superiority. Radio operators were briefed on SOI, numerical cipher, brevity codes, and authentication codes. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Platoon headquarters personnel establish and provide security for the platoon CP on a 24-hour basis. Platoon CP personnel conduct CP activities and coordinate for support of platoon in a timely manner. CP chain of command is established. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Platoon headquarters personnel, under the unit leader's supervision, establish the platoon CP according to the task force concept of operations and TSOP. a. Locate CP where it can best establish communications with the battery team TOC. b. Ensure the CP consists of the platoon headquarters and key personnel. c. Establish communications nets to the higher headquarters CP, support units, and subordinate units consisting of AM and FM radio nets, wire landlines, and aerial- and ground-based sensor nets. d. Coordinate CP perimeter guard. e. Improve tactical positions using passive air defense measures.		
2. Platoon personnel implement CP checklist (FM 44-44) to include— a. Ensure good communications with— (1) Squads and Stinger sections (when attached). (2) Sensors. (3) Maneuver force. b. Observe COMSEC/ECCM procedures. (1) Enter net according to unit SOI procedures. (2) Establish platoon net. (3) Enforce net discipline. c. Ensure all required reports are identified and submitted in a timely manner. d. Establish maintenance recovery procedures for platoon. e. Ensure AD information is disseminated during OPORD briefs. f. Ensure logistical resupply of the platoon occurs. g. Ensure all CP supplies are on-hand. h. Know current SOI and authentication passwords. i. Know and display on map the current locations of all sections and teams, supported unit control measures, A^2C^2 measures, obstacles, et cetera.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Ensure second in command is briefed on plans and operations so he can take over in the absence of their leader, at a minimum, but not limited to— (1) Mission. (2) Platoon combat power. (3) Front-line trace. (4) Friendly air and ground situation. (5) Enemy air, ground, NBC, and EW situation. (6) Location of decontamination points, and clean and dirty routes. (7) SOI requirements and changes. (8) Bridging, route, and obstacle information. k. Take corrective action on nonoperational equipment. l. Make coordination with adjacent units. m. Ensure sections and teams with nonoperational equipment still maintain cover and concealment. Camouflage and secure disabled equipment. n. Ensure sections with problems continue to provide AD coverage to the greatest extent possible. If all Stingers are disabled, individual weapons can still be fired. o. Ensure platoon performs before-, during- and after-operation maintenance on all equipment. p. Ensure adequate security measures are taken for classified documents, missiles, and other sensitive items. q. Ensure platoon members are clean-shaven and perform personal hygiene daily. 3. Radio operators install radio sets for operations. a. Install antennas. b. Perform operational checks of radios. 4. Radio operators establish the platoon NCS. a. Establish appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI. b. Make initial entry into the radio net. c. Authenticate when challenged by higher NCS. 5. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. a. Determine if ECM is being employed. b. Check for accidental or intentional jamming interference. 6. Radio operators initiate preventive ECCM techniques by minimizing transmissions. a. Ensure that all transmissions are necessary. b. Preplan messages prior to transmitting them. c. Transmit as quickly and precisely as possible. d. Use an alternate means of communications whenever possible. 7. Radio operators protect transmissions from enemy interception. a. Use low power. b. Select and use proper antennas with the shortest range capability that is feasible or use directional antennas. c. Select a site which masks transmitted signals from enemy interception. d. Use mobile antennas. 8. Radio operators use good RTO procedures. a. Reduce operator-distinguishing characteristics. b. Operate on a random schedule. c. Authenticate. d. Encrypt all data which fall in EEFI categories. e. Use COMSEC equipment, when available.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. Radio operators recognize jamming and initiate remedial ECCM. a. Determine whether the interference is external or internal to the radio. b. Determine whether the interference is jamming or unintentional interference. c. Report interference and jamming incidents.		
10. Radio operators overcome jamming. a. Continue to operate. b. Improve the signal-to-jamming ratio by adjusting the receiver or increasing the transmitter power output. c. Establish a retransmitting station and relocate the antenna. d. Use an alternate means of communications. e. Change frequencies.		
*11. Unit leader supervises operation of the platoon CP. a. Operates the CP on a 24-hour basis and has "jump" or bounding capabilities to maintain command and control during movement. b. Coordinates with the AD A^2C^2 element. c. Conducts CP activities. d. Establishes and maintains communications. e. Prepares plans and orders to support the conduct of combat operations of the platoon. f. Exercises tactical control of air defense operations. g. Maintains current information on the operational status of equipment. h. Maintains current information on the location and mission of firing platoons and attached elements. i. Provides for coordination of logistical support of the teams. j. Maintains status reports on personnel, casualties, and replacements.		
*12. The unit leader manages the activities of the CP. a. Monitors the air and land battle operations on the regiment and/or brigade situation board in the CP. b. Keeps unit leader and sections informed of entire tactical situation. c. Conducts briefings of the battle situations on a regular basis to battery or task force commander. d. Ensures that the intelligence collection process is timely and information is properly disseminated to users. e. Ensures that the fire units react to changing battle situations.		
*13. Unit leader conducts intelligence activities. a. Conducts IPB (T&EO 44-4-2261.44-A30H). b. Receives, processes, and disseminates combat intelligence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY
	113-572-4008	TRANSMIT A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6005	WRITE A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6006	READ A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	113-571-1004	OPERATE IN RADIO NETS
	113-587-2001	OPERATE RADIO SET AN/PRC-77 OR AN/PRC-25
	113-587-2064	OPERATE RADIO SET AN/VRC-12 OR AN/VRC-47 WITH TSEC/KY-57
	113-587-2070	OPERATE SINCGARS SINGLE CHANNEL (SC)
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	113-587-2075	OPERATE SINCGARS DATA DEVICES

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Adjust Air Defense Coverage (SHORAD) (44-4-5143.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is participating in combat operations. The threat or priorities change, air defense assets are not sufficient to cover all critical assets, or division suffers a significant loss of maneuverability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ADCOORD section adjusts air defense coverage to support the regiment scheme of maneuver as it changes. The air defense platoon maintains coverage with its remaining assets. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Platoon leader recommends priorities and develops new air defense plan (warning order, FRAGO, or verbal order). - Reorganizes and consolidates ADA assets as priorities change. Notes: • Due to time limitations, adjustments to the original plan will probably occur in the form of a verbal FRAGO or execution matrix. • Events that may drive the need for coverage adjustment include— •• Intelligence reports concerning aerial reinforcements of frontline enemy units changing the threat or changes in large enemy unit positions affecting the templated objectives of the enemy in the supported regiment sector. •• A change in the air defense assets available by air defense losses in one particular area of the regiment sector or additional support from division assets. •• A change in the supported unit assets by the addition of a major maneuver such as a squadron or significant losses of maneuver assets in one particular area of the regiment, such as one squadron becoming combat ineffective. 2. The platoon CP continues third-dimensional IPB process. a. Keeps the platoon commander informed of all changes within the regiment's area of interest and major changes in adjacent unit intelligence pictures. b. Keeps platoon leaders informed of the intelligence picture. 3. The platoon CP issues warning orders to subordinate and supported units. a. Warning order allows adequate preparation time for movement of units from one location to another. b. Notifies supported units to facilitate changes in logistics support and establishment of support relationships. c. Maintains command and control through verification of movement and contact with newly supported unit(s).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	071-326-5503	ISSUE A WARNING ORDER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Disseminate Early Warning (44-5-0003.44-A30H)
(FM 44-48) (FM 44-64)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit air and missile defense operations center is located in proximity to the division air tactical control to facilitate synchronization of current operations. It consists of two hard shelter HMMWVs containing all source analysis system, maneuver control system, and two air and missile defense work stations current and future operations, and one joint tactical information distribution system radio. Sentinel radars are occupying designated positions. Early warning target data has been received from the ABMOC. The OPFOR are using electronic warfare to include MIJI. Enemy air threat is according to the OPORD intelligence annex and intelligence summaries. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The sensor teams must detect, identify, and verify target dissemination within 2 to 6 seconds. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Team maintains air surveillance of their sector. a. Uses ECM to reduce radiation detection. b. Uses ECCM to combat MIJI tactics used by the OPFOR. 2. Team detects and evaluates aerial targets. a. The software automatically evaluates targets based on heading and local airspace management procedures and controls. b. The software displays targets on the monitor screen. * 3. Team chief supervises the operator disseminating target information over the SINCGARS or EPLRS data broadcast net. a. When possible, target location, tentative identification, and number of aircraft are reported at maximum range. b. The software automatically disseminates target data over the SINCGARS or EPLRS data net. c. The software automatically updates track information over the SINCGARS or EPLRS data net every 2 seconds. d. The software automatically scrubs tracks when no longer within range.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-096-1028	REACT TO ALARMS ON THE SHTU

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Establish Liaison Team (44-5-2190.44-A30H)
(FM 44-64) (FM 100-103) (FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is attached to supported units. The supported unit's CP establishes a position for the platoon CP to provide coordinated air defense and airspace management during combat operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The supported unit is kept current on the status and location of its supporting ADA units. The platoon CP receives and passes messages between the ADA commander and the TF CP. The liaison team resolves airspace conflicts with the brigade TOC A^2C^2 section affecting platoon operations. The time required to perform this task in MOPP4 and/or blackout conditions is increased.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader establishes an operational position at the supported unit's TOC. a. Installs communications link with parent ADA unit. b. Posts operational information where required in the TOC.		
* 2. Unit leader coordinates ADA activities with the supported unit's staff and the battery CP. a. Keeps the supported commander informed of the ADA unit status. b. Coordinates ADA reports within the TOC. c. Receives and passes messages between the supported unit's TOC and the battery CP. d. Advises the supported unit on active and passive air defense measures to include ADW and WCS changes. e. Responds to the changing needs on the battlefield by advising the supported unit commander on ADA capabilities and limitations. f. Passes early warning for air attacks over supported unit's command net. g. Assists supported unit's S2 in preparing the IPB by identifying likely enemy air avenues of approach. h. Advises the supported unit commander on changes on the battlefield affecting ADA operations as supported units conduct combat operations. i. Resolves air management issues with the supported unit's S3 section.		
* 3. The ADA liaison officer coordinates air defense with HIMAD units in support of brigade operations. a. Keeps the HIMAD unit updated on the division and brigade's schemes of maneuver. b. Provides HIMAD unit with brigade INTSUMs. c. Passes applicable HIMAD early warning information through the brigade early warning system. d. Coordinates with HIMAD unit for reinforcing fires to support the brigade's scheme of maneuver. e. Integrates HIMAD early warning coverage with other ground-based sensor assets to maintain early warning while sensors move.		
.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. Unit leader identifies and resolves airspace conflicts affecting platoon operations over the brigade a. Monitors operations of airspace users through spot reports, SITREPs, and radio traffic. b. Monitors intelligence reports. c. Disseminates unscheduled, high-volume use of airspace. d. Informs airspace users at each echelon of any loss of communications affecting any airspace user. e. Identifies and correlates situations affecting airspace use for unscheduled events. f. Analyzes airspace use on the situation map to determine and resolve conflicts. g. Recommends shifting or ending fires when affecting high priority aviation missions. h. Disseminates changes of control or restriction measures, WCS, and NBC information which affect airspace users. i. Reviews immediate air request (Army) for conflicts with current operations. j. Analyzes OPLANs and OPORDs for possible conflicts among flight routes, control measures, artillery and ADA locations, and flight obstructions to determine the impact; develops and recommends alternatives.		
* 5. Unit leader provides platoon inputs to airspace use and situation overlays. Provides the following: a. ADA unit locations. b. ADA unit WCS. c. Weapon system coverage (both HIMAD and SHORAD). d. A^2C^2 control measures and restrictions.		
* 6. Liaison team leader relays all C^3I information to TF to include— a. Sensor frequencies. b. Sensor locations. c. Sensor security from air and ground attack. d. Which sensors are broadcasting EW. e. Sensor contingency plans.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	301-348-6001	PROTECT CLASSIFIED INFORMATION AND MATERIAL
STP 44-14S14-SM-TG	441-066-1040	VISUALLY IDENTIFY THREAT AND FRIENDLY AIRCRAFT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
	441-092-1035	OPERATE INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SET AN/VIC-1

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BATTERY HQS
2 AVENGER PLT HQS
4 AVENGER SQUADS

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-C326.44-A30H)
(AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)
(FM 44-44)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Platoon is in a tactical position performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. Unit trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader identifies risk or safety hazards. a. Analyzes OPLAN, FRAGO, or OPORD for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrates safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assesses risks before issuing a FRAGO when missions or conditions change.		
* 2. Leaders evaluate risk and safety hazards identified in the operation. a. Compare the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective. b. Determine the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Quantify the risk. d. Describe the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. e. Prepare courses of action that minimize accidental losses.		
* 3. Unit leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards. a. Choose course of action that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk. b. Develop procedures that reduce risk and safety hazards. c. Prescribe safety and protective equipment.		
4. Platoon carries out safety procedures. a. Safety briefings occur prior to all operations. b. Safety procedures are practiced during all mission rehearsals. c. Members make on-the-spot safety corrections.		

Notes:
- Safety: Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (FM 25-100).
- Risk: Emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take “risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems” as an imperative of the AirLand Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0102	SUPERVISE UNIT PREVENTIVE MEDICINE AND FIELD SANITATION PROCEDURES
	850-001-2001	ASSESS POTENTIAL FOR ACCIDENTS
	850-001-3001	CONTROL MISSION SAFETY HAZARDS
	850-001-4001	INTEGRATE RISK MANAGEMENT IN PLATOON MISSION

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATION

6-1. General. An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the platoon's ability to perform its missions. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. The using units should modify the evaluation based on METT-TC and other considerations, such as contingency plans. Selected T&EOs in Chapter 5 are used for evaluation, which involves the total unit and employs a realistic OPFOR and the use of MILES. At the end of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Purpose. This chapter contains guidance and examples of methods for preparing and conducting platoon evaluations. The unit evaluation provides an assessment to the chain of command of the unit's capability to conduct its wartime mission(s). The evaluation may also be used as a diagnostic tool from which the unit commander can develop future training plans. The basis of the evaluation should be the training and evaluation outlines contained in Chapter 5.

6-3. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the platoon's capabilities.

a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. The sample evaluation scenario in Figure 6-1 contains the missions as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario evaluation. Selective tailoring is required, because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element, using Table 2-1, Chapter 2. Record the selected missions in the Unit Proficiency Work Sheet, Figure 6-2, page 6-3.

(2) List each mission on a Task Summary Sheet, Figure 6-3, page 6-4.

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheets which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations, Figure 6-1, Sample Evaluation Scenario. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-process AARs.

EVALUATION SCENARIO

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
1	Conduct pretest (for example, install MILES and troubleshoot equipment and vehicles; conduct inspections, implement OPSEC measures, and conduct fratricide avoidance training).	Before start time		
2	Receive OPORD	1 hour	Day 1	0400

Figure 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario.

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
3	Start IPB (Third Dimension)	3 hours		0700
4	Issue Warning Orders—Start Evaluation	1 hour		0800
5	Establish and Maintain Communications	2 hours		1000
6	Move and Occupy Assembly Area	1 hour		1100
7	Plan and Conduct ADA Operations (Defense)	3 hours		1400
8	Continue to Update IPB and ADA Plan	1 hour		1500
9	Coordinate ADA with Supported Unit	3 hours		1800
10	Move to Assembly Area and Conduct AAR	2 hours		2000
11	Conduct Sustaining Activities—Prepare for Next Mission	2 hours		2200
12	Receive FRAGO	1 hour	Day 2	2300
13	Issue Warning Order	1 hour		2400
14	Platoon Linkup with Supported Unit	2 hours		0200
15	Plan and Conduct ADA Operations (Offense)	3 hours		0500
16	React to OPFOR Ground Attack	1 hour		0600
17	Conduct AAR and Sustaining Activities	3 hours		0900
18	React to BMNT Alert	1 hour	Day 3	1000
19	Receive FRAGO	1 hour		1100
20	Adjust the ADA Plan	1 hour		1200
21	Provide Continuous ADA Coverage to TF (Movement to Contact)	4 hours		1600
22	React to Early Warning	1 hour		1700
23	Repel Aerial Attack (Hinds)	1 hour		1800
24	Submit Engagement Reports to Btry TOC or TF	1 hour		1900
25	Conduct AAR and Sustaining Activities	4 hours		2300
26	React to OPFOR Smoke	1 hour		2400
27	React to NBC Attack	1 hour		0100
28	Conduct Decontamination Operations	2 hours		0300
29	Consolidate and Reestablish Chain of Command	1 hour		0400
30	Early Sensors Destroyed by Special Operation Forces	1 hour		0500
31	Provide Command and Control and Instruct Squads to Start Search and Scan Procedures	1 hour		0600
32	Early Warning Sensors Restored	1 hour		0700
33	OPFOR Retreats	1 hour		0800
34	Conduct AAR and Sustaining Activities			
35	Receive FRAGO	4 hours		2400
36	Link Up with Supported Unit	1 hour	Day 4	0100
37	Plan and Conduct ADA Operations (Retrograde)	4 hours		0600
38	React to Early Warning	1 hour		0700
39	Repel Aerial Attack (Four Hinds)	2 hours		0900
40	Submit Engagement Report and Request Missile Resupply to Btry CP and/or TF TOC	1 hour		1000
41	Conduct Final AAR—Exercise Ends	4 hours		1400
	TOTAL TIME	64 hours		

Figure 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario (Continued).

UNIT:___________________________ **DATE**:________________

NO.	**UNIT MISSION/TASK**	**1st SQD/TM**	**2nd SQD/TM**	**3rd SQD/TM**	**4th SQD/TM**	**5th SQD/TM**	**6th SQD/TM**	**UNIT OVERALL RATING AND REMARKS**
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	

Figure 6-2. Example Unit Proficiency Work Sheet.

TASK SUMMARY SHEET			
MISSION:			
		EVALUATION	
TASK TITLES	**T&EO NUMBER**	**GO**	**NO GO**
Observer/Controller's Signature _____			
Note: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. O/C's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.			

Figure 6-3. Example Task Summary Sheet.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-1 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario on Figure 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-1. Consolidated Support Requirements.

AMMUNITION	DODIC	BASIC LOAD
5.56-mm, blank M16 rifle	AO8O	40 rds
5.56-mm, blank M249 (AR)	AO75	300 rds
.50-caliber blank M3P mg	A598	200 rds
PYROTECHNICS	**DODIC**	**ANNUAL REQUIREMENTS**
Gren smk CS	G963	28
Gren smk HC	G930	48
Gren smk GREEN	G940	16
Gren smk YELLOW	G945	48
Gren smk RED	G950	36
Gren smk VIOL	G955	28
Smk pot flt M4A2	K867	20
Sig illum GREEN para	L305	8
Sig illum RED para	L306	28
Sig illum WHITE para	L307	20
Sig illum RED star	L311	8
Sig illum WHITE para	L312	20
Sig illum GREEN star	L314	20
Flare surface trip	L495	28
Sim proj gnd burst	L594	84
Sim arty gun flash	L596	20
Sim booby trap flash	L598	40
Sim booby trap illum	L599	28
Sim booby trap whis	L600	28
Sim hand gren	L601	56
OTHER ITEMS		**REQUIREMENTS**
OPFOR (Air) Aerial platforms, rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs		As Needed
(Ground)		As Needed
Controller guns		As Needed
Maps: Military 1:50,000 Scale		8 ea
MILES Equipment		As Needed
Binocular: Modular construction, Mil Scale Reticle 7X50-mm W/E		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screen Support System		Per MTOE
Camouflage Screening System: Ultra-LTWT Radar scattering Gen Purpose		Per MTOE
Antenna Group: OE-254/GRC		Per MTOE
Cable telephone: WD-1/TT DR-8 1/2 Km		Per MTOE
Reeling Machine Cable Hand: RL-39		Per MTOE
Headset Microphone: H-182/PT		Per MTOE
Elec Transfer Keying Device ETKD: KYK-13/TSEC		Per MTOE
Gen Set: Ded Skid MTD 3KW 60HZ		Per MTOE
Interrogator Set: AN/PPX-3 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Interrogator Computer: KIR-1A/TSEC with Z-ACA/1 PS		Per MTOE
Programmer Interrogator Set: AN/GSX-1 (Stinger)		Per MTOE
Tape Reader General Purpose: KOI-18/TSEC		Per MTOE
Night Vision Goggle: AN/PVS-7B		Per MTOE

Table 6-1. Consolidated Support Requirements (Continued).

OTHER ITEMS	REQUIREMENTS
Radiac Set: AN/VDR-2	Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-92A	Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-87A	Per MTOE
Radio Set: AN/VRC-91A	Per MTOE
Training Set Guided Missile System: M134 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Trainer Captive Flight XM67: (ATAS)	Per MTOE
Trainer Handling GM Launcher: M60 (Stinger)	Per MTOE
Switchboard Telephone Manual: SB-993/GT	Per MTOE
Telephone Set: TA-312/PT	Per MTOE
Alarm Chemical Agent Automatic: M22	Per MTOE
Water Heater: Mounted Ration	Per MTOE
Computer: Fire Control AN/PSG-8(V)I	Per MTOE
Navigation Set Satellite Systems: AN/PSN-11	Per MTOE
Radiac Set: AN/UDR-13	Per MTOE
Tow Bar motor Vehicle: Wheeled Vehicle	Per MTOE
Data Transfer Device: AN/CYZ-10 (C)	Per MTOE
Mast Antenna 10 meters: AB-XXX	Per MTOE
Monitor Chemical Agent	Per MTOE
Meals ready to eat (MREs)	3 per man per day
Fuel	As needed

Notes:

- The annual pyrotechnics requirement figures represent the pyrotechnic allocation for a platoon training year. Unit commanders determine how much to use during each training exercise to meet their training objectives. However, commanders cannot exceed their annual allotment during the training year. OPFOR requirements are included in above table.
- MILES Equipment. The commander will request and use all MILES equipment authorized, including OPFOR MILES equipment.

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the conduct of the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation of the platoon:

(1) Senior O/C.

(2) Platoon O/C.

(3) Operations O/C.

(4) Recorder O/C.

(5) Logistics O/C.

(6) NBC O/C.

b. O/Cs are required to be thoroughly familiar with the platoon's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the platoon and how it is integrated into and supports the force-protection operation. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local defense, convoy procedures, air defense, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed experience in NBC and local defense common task areas. O/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating. O/Cs should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must make objective evaluations, function effectively as team members, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C a detailed understanding of specific responsibilities and on building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list and specific evaluation purpose, and objectives.

(2) The platoon METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.

(3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each other team member.

(4) Detailed responsibilities of individual team members with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility.

(5) A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs' folders.

(6) A detailed reconnaissance of the area for the evaluation.

(7) The O/C communications and command and control system.

(8) Safety procedures.

(9) Evaluation data collection plan and procedures.

(10) AAR procedures and techniques

(11) A talk-through of the entire evaluation which includes wargaming all items of the master events list in order of their occurrence and review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides leadership and focuses his efforts on ensuring O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the plan. He answers questions concerning the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the platoon AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for the implementation of the evaluation scoring system. Although the senior O/C makes the final evaluation, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the unit to accomplish the missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit’s performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. This evaluation has four steps.

(1) Identify the MTP T&EOs which correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performance of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit's overall capability to perform the task by using GO NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO—the unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.

(b) NO-GO—the unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Other locally designed reports approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan may be used to collect information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its wartime mission per established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit's overall final rating. These reports may include—

(1) Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-5, page 6-9). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

(2) Environmental Data Sheet (Figure 6-6, page 6-10). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-7, page 6-11). This report records information concerning platoon personnel, equipment, and enemy losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION:				DATE:		
2. UNIT LEADERS: (Circle the most correct answer)						
POSITION	**RANK**	**TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)**				
PLT LEADER	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
PLT SGT	SFC/SSG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
1st SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
2nd SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
3rd SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
4th SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
5th SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
6th SQD/TM LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
3. UNIT STRENGTH: (Excluding leaders)						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGE: (List major items)						
5. COMMENTS:						
OBSERVER/CONTROLLER'S SIGNATURE:						

Figure 6-5. Sample Unit Data Sheet.

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:
DATE AND TIME EXERCISE STARTED:
DATE AND TIME EXERCISE ENDED:
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Raining Snowing Foggy
Other: Temperature:
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)
Dry Wet Ice Snow Other:
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Day Night Moon Phase 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:
4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description) Flat Rolling Mountains Jungle Desert Urban Arctic Other: Top Soil: Sandy Rocky Clay Other Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:
5. REMARKS:

Figure 6-6. Sample Environmental Data Sheet.

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT							
UNIT IDENTIFICATION:							
MISSION TITLE OR TASK NUMBER	**DATE/TIME OF ENEMY CONTACT**	**FRIENDLY**		**ENEMY**		**ENEMY VEHICLES DESTROYED**	
		WIA	**KIA**	**WIA**	**KIA**		
COMMENTS:							

Figure 6-7. Sample Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.

6-6. Selecting and Training the OPFOR. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the platoon is limited to dismounted infantry personnel and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the platoon's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a platoon grade officer or senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to his duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C

responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes—

(1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.

(2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.

(3) OPFOR tasks and standards.

(4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.

(5) Command and control.

(6) Safety.

6-7. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for the conduct of the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements, which are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

Notes:

- Safety. All soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious during the conduct of any training exercise. All O/Cs and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that they conduct all training in a safe manner. Prior to the beginning of an evaluation, brief all personnel on specific safety measures that they must observe during this particular exercise. Use T&EO 71-2-C326.44-A30H, Chapter 5, when planning training in risk management procedures and safety analysis.
- Fratricide. In this exercise, you will engage hostile aircraft with your Avenger and small arms. You will use IFF, positive identification, and comply with the weapon control status in force. Your target engagements will be closely monitored. The evaluation will be stopped when fratricide violations are observed.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the platoon.

b. The headquarters two echelons above the platoon being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. They issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control of the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

6-8. The AAR. After completion of each evaluation phase and the evaluation, provide feedback to the platoon to increase and reinforce learning by conducting AARs.

a. Feedback. In an AAR, because all members of the unit participate, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer database for key points. For example, a leader's assessment of the situation and the basis for his decisions are known only to him. The AAR leader tries to draw this information out so that it becomes an important part of the discussion and forms the context for discussing alternative courses of action.

b. Prepare the AAR. AAR preparation involves four steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORD included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The O/C should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORD so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate echelons that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting the actions that make the difference between a unit's success or failure. The O/C need not remain overly close to the unit leader since more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location, or along the unit's route when moving. Since unit orders may identify important activities, checkpoints, and so forth, the O/C should position himself so that he can best observe anticipated critical events. Example of critical events include—

(a) Loss of a major weapon system or item of equipment.

(b) Major breach of security.

(c) Major command and control failures.

(d) Acquisition of important intelligence.

(e) Successful deceptive ADA maneuver.

(f) Occupation or control of major terrain features.

(g) Neutralization or destruction of major OPFOR capabilities, elements, or weapons.

(h) Fratricide violations.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where the most critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. Most often the OPFOR or unit objectives will be suitable for assembling the players and conducting AARs.

(4) Debrief the O/Cs. While the units are moving to the selected site, debrief the O/Cs. The senior O/C must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. Therefore, the fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's major tactical events in the order in which they occurred. Descriptions should emerge from the debriefing of the subordinate unit O/Cs and the OPFOR leader and/or controller. After the senior O/C has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he should review the critical events and rank them in terms of their relevance to the exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. He should then select as many critical events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and place them in chronological order.

c. Conduct the AAR. Conducting the AAR requires four steps:

(1) Organize the participants. When the O/C and/or AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's O/C is with the unit for which he is responsible.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. He describes these as specifically as possible. The AAR leader also states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. Limit the number to three or four key points to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the major tactical events in their order of occurrence. He uses diagrams to help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and, as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, locations of engagements, and so forth. Discuss each major event in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader—

(a) Avoids giving a critique or lecture.

(b) Guides the discussion by asking leading questions.

(c) Has players describe, in their own terms, what happened.

(d) Has players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, why it happened, and how it could have been done better.

(e) Focuses the discussion so that important tactical lessons are made explicit.

(f) Relates tactical events to subsequent results.

(g) Avoids detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(h) Encourages the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, objectives, and so forth.

(i) Prohibits players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(j) Discusses each incident of fratricide, near-fratricide, or possible fratricide in each AAR in which any of these three incidents may occur.

Note: In complying with (j) above, use the following:

- Each time you fired munitions, the possibility of hitting friendly forces or their equipment existed. The better you observed all required performance measures, the better your chances were that you did not commit fratricide. In this exercise, you engaged hostile aircraft with your small arms and/or primary weapon system. You should have used IFF, hostile criteria, visual aircraft recognition, and complied with the weapon control status which was in force.
- Your engagements in this exercise and/or evaluation were closely monitored. We will now thoroughly review your observance of the following required fratricide performance measures:
  - Use of IFF and hostile criteria to identify all targets.
  - Visual identification of vehicles and aircraft.
  - Observance of weapon control status.
  - Observance of corridors, routes, zones, flight levels, and other airspace control measures.
  - Observance of allied aircraft scheduled flyovers.
  - Compliance with ground defense plan control measures to prevent friendly casualties including sign and countersign, range cards, sectors of fire, and coordination with friendly units for their locations and planned movements.

(4) Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, the AAR leader can have a private conversation with the platoon leader regarding his strengths and weaknesses and what he can do to further improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader—

(a) Maintains order and discipline.

(b) Reviews training objectives.

(c) Holds a discussion of the important events. This addresses events as they occurred and how the unit could have done better. The AAR leader guides this discussion. The leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so that the results of mistakes are understood by all participants (one mistake is often the partial cause of another).

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Holds the attention of the participants and involves them in the discussion.

(g) Ensures that new training objectives are clear and concise.

(h) Uses sketches, diagrams, or terrain models to reinforce points made in the AAR.

Note: Within the constraints of the scenario developed by the implementing headquarters, subordinate O/Cs may conduct an intermediate AAR after the completion of each evaluation phase.

APPENDIX A

AVENGER GUNNERY TABLES

Section I. Introduction

A-1. Purpose. The Avenger gunnery program is designed to develop and test the proficiency of the individual, team, section, and platoon in gunnery techniques. It prepares individuals, teams, sections, and platoons to execute their mission in combat and it standardizes Avenger gunnery training and gunnery skill qualifications through performance-oriented, sequential, progressive, realistic, and challenging training.

A-2. General. The training tables (see Figure A-1 on pages A-4 and A-5) provide mandatory qualification standards and training strategies for the Avenger weapon system. These training tables focus on preparing the individual to perform as part of a team to accomplish the unit mission. Standards outlined in the MTPs and/or STPs are the minimum acceptable levels of performance.

a. The Avenger team (one fire unit) consists of a team leader and gunner. The Avenger section (three fire units) consists of a section sergeant, two team leaders, and three gunners. A platoon is comprised of two sections (six fire units).

b. The training strategy (see Figure A-2 on page A-6) is based on the building-block approach, in which individuals are trained in basic skills before being integrated into teams. Teams train progressively from basic tasks through integration as battery, battalion, or regimental elements performing their wartime mission. Unit commanders have flexibility in applying these strategies and may integrate command and control, maneuver, and survival and sustainment skills into the training as they see fit.

A-3. Responsibilities. Commanders are responsible for conducting training and gunner qualification per established CATS and MTPs. Commanders, however, have the latitude to adjust event frequency based on local operational requirements, unit METL, contingency directives, and command guidance.

Section II. Gunnery Tables

A-4. Basic Gunnery Tables. Train individuals to perform as team members to effectively conduct drills in a controlled environment. Basic gunnery skills include Tables I through III (see Figure A-1). Performance of these tables is mandatory for all crew members and will be completed within 90 days of arrival at the unit. Crew members failing to meet established standards will train and retest until standards are met before progressing to the next performance level. Tables I and II will be performed, as required, for sustainment of skills once Table III has been validated.

a. Table I, Avenger Weapon System Components/PMCS/Functions and Platoon/Section/Team Operations: Develops a working understanding of the Avenger weapon system. Trains the individual to identify the components of the Avenger weapon system, the Stinger 13 critical checks, and to understand the function of Avenger components and PMCS performed at the operator level. Trains the individual on knowledge of platoon, section, and team operations.

Standards: Crew members will correctly identify and state the function of the Avenger weapon system and Stinger missile components, perform PMCS per TMs 9-1425-433-10 and 9-1425-429-12. The crew member must achieve a minimum score of 80 percent on the platoon, section, and team operations.

b. Table II, VACR/IFF/SHTU/HTU/PLGR/ANCD: Trains the crew member in recognizing enemy and friendly aircraft. The crew member also receives instruction on SHTU/HTU/PLGR/ANCD operations, charging the IFF programmer batteries, and IFF code loading procedures.

(1) Standards: The individual must achieve a minimum score of 90 percent on the VACR test, receive GOs in SHTU/HTU linkup, PLGR/ANCD operations, successfully program the IFF to accept a code, and receive GOs in other IFF procedures and battery charging per STP 44-14S14-SM-TG.

(2) Standards: (VACR) Each crew member must identify 45 out of 50 aircraft by correct aircraft name or nomenclature within 5 seconds, per aircraft.

c. Table III, Crew Member Certification: This table is a critical gate used to provide an evaluation for the Avenger crew members on Tables I and II per STP 44-14S14-SM-TG.

Standards: Each crew member must receive a minimum score of 90 percent for his part in each evaluated task. If an individual fails to certify on Table III, he will be retrained and must satisfactorily complete Table III prior to advancing to the next phase.

A-5. Intermediate Gunnery Tables. Train teams to engage ground and aerial targets in static, remote, and shoot-on-the-move modes, using missiles and the M3P machine gun (includes Tables IV through VIII).

Standard: Table VIII is the standard required and must be successfully completed prior to advancing to the next phase of training.

a. Table IV, Tracking Practice: Trains the Avenger team in tracking procedures through the use of aerial targets and ground targets using the Avenger Table Top Trainer (AVG TTT). The team leader controls the tracking practice.

Standards: Each Avenger team will successfully track four out of five aerial targets with the captive flight trainer (CFT).

Standards: The individual must achieve a score of GO on all drills.

b. Table V, Battle/Crew Drill Practice: Trains the Avenger team in engagement procedures using the AVG TTT. The team leader controls the engagement. The Avenger team deploys to a unit training area and operates the AVG TTT or CFT against live aircraft, when available. The AVG TTT will be used to maintain Avenger proficiency and preparation for Table VIII qualification.

Standards: The Avenger team must achieve a score of GO on all drills.

c. Table VI, Battle/Crew Drill Certification: Table VI is a critical gate, which prepares the Avenger teams by practical exercise for drill qualification (Table VIII). The individual will perform drill tasks required for his position as specified in ARTEP 44-117-21-Drill.

Standards: The team will fire 10 engagement presentations with the AVG TTT. The 10 engagements must consist of 5 aerial engagements with the CFT and 5 M3P MG engagements. One of the 10 engagements will be under NBC conditions. The 5 M3P MG engagements consist of 4 ground targets and 1 aerial target engagement. The Avenger team leader will perform 4 of the 10 engagements. The 4 team leader engagements will consist of 2 aerial engagements with the CFT and 2 ground engagements with the M3P MG. The gunner will perform 6 of the 10 engagements. The 6 gunner engagements will consist of 4 aerial engagements and 2 ground engagements. The 2 ground engagements

will be with the M3P MG. The 4 aerial engagements will consist of 3 CFT engagements and 1 M3P MG engagement. Each team must successfully complete 3 of 6 aerial engagements and 2 of 4 ground engagements with the AVG TTT, and must score a GO on all drills. It is the platoon leader and platoon sergeant's responsibility to ensure that the teams follow the correct engagement procedures.

d. Table VII, Team Prequalification (Tables I and VI): Prepares the Avenger team for qualification in Table VIII. The platoon leader and/or platoon sergeant will administer a practice and/or diagnostic test on all elements of Table VIII. Teams who are not proficient will receive additional training to prepare them for qualification.

(1) Standards: Each crew member must achieve 90 percent on VACR and range ring test; 80 percent on the platoon, section, and team test; and a GO on all crew drills, IFF programming, SHTU/HTU linkup, and PLGR/ANCD operations.

(2) Standards: All assigned Avenger teams (team leader and gunner) must successfully meet the standards for Table VII prior to executing Table VIII. The unit commander may set the standards for Table VII for advancing to Table VIII. The Avenger team will fire 10 of the 13 engagement presentations. The 10 engagements must consist of 5 aerial engagements with the CFT and 5 M3P MG engagements. (One of the 10 engagements will be under NBC conditions). The 5 M3P MG engagements consist of 4 ground targets and 1 aerial target engagement. The Avenger team leader will perform 4 of the 10 engagements from the RCU. The 4 team leader engagements will consist of 2 aerial engagements with the CFT and 2 ground engagements with the M3P MG. The Avenger gunner will perform 6 of the 10 engagements from inside the turret. The 6 gunner engagements will consist of 4 aerial engagements and 2 ground engagements. The 2 ground engagements will be with the M3P MG. The 4 aerial engagements will consist of 3 CFT engagements and 1 M3P MG engagement. The unit commander may decide which 10 of the 13 engagements the Avenger teams perform according to the guidelines in STRAC. Each Avenger team will fire 25 rounds per M3P MG engagement.

e. Table VIII, Team Qualification. Table VIII is a critical gate. A battalion evaluation team will evaluate drills. The failure of any task results in an unqualified team.

(1) Standards: Each crew member must achieve 90 percent on VACR and range ring test; 80 percent on the platoon, section, and squad test; and a GO on all crew drills, IFF programming, SHTU/HTU linkup, and PLGR/ANCD operations.

(2) Standards: Each team must correctly engage five out of six hostile aerial targets using the $1/5^{th}$ scale remotely piloted vehicle target system (RPVTS). The six aerial engagements consist of five CFT and one M3P MG. Additionally, Table VIII requires the successful engagement of three out of four ground targets using the M3P MG within the past 6 months. The engagements for the CFT and the M3P MG are contained in Table 4-8 of STRAC.

(3) Standards. The Avenger team will fire 10 of the 13 engagement presentations listed in Table 4-8 of STRAC. The 10 engagements must consist of 5 aerial engagements with the CFT and 5 M3P MG engagements. (One of the 10 engagements will be under NBC conditions). The 5 M3P MG engagements will consist of 4 ground targets and 1 aerial target engagement. The Avenger team leader will perform 4 of the 10 engagements from the RCU. The 4 team leader engagements will consist of 2 aerial engagements with the CFT and 2 ground engagements with the M3P MG. The Avenger gunner will perform 6 of the 10 engagements from inside the turret. The 6 gunner engagements will consist of 4 aerial engagements and 2 ground engagements. The 2 ground engagements will be with the M3P MG. The 4 aerial engagements will consist of 3 CFT engagements and 1 M3P MG engagement. The unit

commander may decide which 10 of the 13 engagements the Avenger teams perform according to the guidelines in the STRAC.

A-6. Advanced Gunnery Tables. Train the team to engage targets in various modes under various conditions. Advanced gunnery skills include Tables IX and X. Satisfactory performance on Table VIII indicates the Avenger team has qualified with live ammunition (M3P machine gun).

a. Table IX, Platoon Operations Evaluation: Trains the Avenger teams to march order, emplace, and engage aerial targets under various conditions through the use of live aircraft and MILES. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant maintain command and control. Teams deploy to the LTA, which may be in conjunction with a unit FTX, and emplace and engage aerial targets. Trains the team and/or platoon to conduct an RSOP and to select firing positions. Upon completion of activities, the platoon leader and platoon sergeant consolidate data, assess platoon tactical plans, and validate the platoon's defense, and conduct an AAR for platoon members. This training event may encompass more than one training day to be satisfactorily completed.

Standards: Activities will be evaluated based upon principles of air defense employment contained in ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP; FMs 25-101 and 44-100; and appropriate OPLANs, OPORDs, and SOPs.

b. Table X, LFX (Annual Service Practice): This training event may encompass more than one training day to be satisfactorily completed.

Standards: Activities will be evaluated based upon principles of air defense employment contained in ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP; FMs 25-101, 44-44, and 44-100; and appropriate OPLANs, OPORDs, and SOPs.

Standards: Selected Avenger teams will engage an aerial target with a Stinger missile and successfully engage ground targets with the M3P MG. Successfully perform drills per ARTEP 44-117-21-Drill.

AVENGER TRAINING TABLES					
TABLE	**EVENT** (1)	**LEVEL**	**HOW** (2)	**WHERE** (3)	**FREQUENCY**
I	Avenger Weapon System Components/PMCS/Functions PLT/Section/Team Operations	Crew Member	(C)(D)(PE) (1)(2)(3)(10)	UTA	Monthly
II	VACR/IFF/SHTU/HTU/ PLGR/ANCD	Crew Member	(C)(D)(PE) (11)	UTA	Monthly
III*	Crew Member Certification Tables I and II	Crew Member	(E)(1)(2)(3)(5) (6)(7)(8)(12)	UTA	Monthly
IV	Tracking Practice	Team	(D)(PE)(1)(2)(3) (4)(5)(6)(7)(8)	UTA	Quarterly
V	Battle/Crew Drill Practice	Team	(D)(PE) (5)(12)(13)	UTA	Quarterly
VI*	Battle/Crew Drill Certification	Team	(E) (3)(5)(8)(12)	UTA	Quarterly
VII	Tables I/VI Team Prequalification	Team	(PE) (3)(4)(5)(7)(8)	UTA/ LTA	Semiannually
VIII*	Team Qualification	Team	(E)(3)(4)(5) (7)(8)(12)(13)	UTA/ LTA	Semiannually

Figure A-1. Avenger Training Tables.

TABLE	EVENT (1)	LEVEL	HOW (2)	WHERE (3)	FREQUENCY
IX	Platoon Operations	Platoon	(PE)(E) (3)(5)(7)(8)9)	UTA/ LTA	Annually
X	LFX (Annual Service Practice)	Platoon	(E) (3)(5)(8)(9)	LTA	Annually

Notes:

(1) EVENT—Track and engage aerial targets.

- 50 percent of displays are multiple aircraft and a mix of friend and foe.
- 50 percent hostile aircraft employ IRCM.

(2) HOW

- (C)—conference
- (D)—demonstration
- (E)—evaluation
- (PE)—practical exercise (hands-on)
  - (1) STPT/AVG TTT
  - (2) IMTS
  - (1) CFT
  - (4) VACR kit
  - (5) Tactical equipment (IFF, Stinger, and Avenger)
  - (6) THT
  - (7) FHT
  - (8) Tactical aircraft, if available
  - (9) Targets 1/5th scale or its equivalent
  - (10) MILES
  - (11) TM 9-1425-433-10
  - (12) FM 44-80
  - (13) ARTEP 44-117-21-Drill
  - (14) M3P machine gun
  - (15) TM 9-1425-429-12
  - (16) Unit METL
  - (17) ATWESS cartridge will be used in battery level and higher level supported FTXs.
  - (18) TRC B/C units will perform upon mobilization.
  - (19) One team will fire while all other available section members track with CFT (TRC A—one missile per four teams per year, TRC B/C—one missile per platoon per training year).

(3) WHERE

- UTA—unit training area
- LTA—local training area
- MTA—maneuver training area

*Critical gate—must perform to standard to progress to next table.

.

Figure A-1. Avenger Training Tables (Continued).

ELEMENT	TABLE22 I	TABLE II	TABLE III	TABLE IV	TABLE V	TABLE VI	TABLE VII	TABLE VIII (12)	TABLE IX	TABLE X
TEAM	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		
SECTION									X	X
CRITICAL GATE			X			X		X		
REQUIREMENTS										
AC (14)	M	M	M	Q	Q	Q	SA	SA	A	A
RC (14)	Q	Q	Q	SA	SA	SA	A	A	A	A
RESOURCES										
OPTEMPO (HMMWV) (11)	12	12	12	4	4	4	2	2	1	1
AMMO (10)										
TADSS	(1)(2)(3)	(4)(6)(7)	(1)(2)(3)(5)(6)(7)	(1)(7)	(1)(2)(3)(5)(6)(7)(8)(9)	(3)(5)	(3)(4)(5)(7)	(3)(4)(5)(7)	(3)(5)(7)(8)(9)	(3)(5)(8)(9)
RANGES (13)										
TRAINING LAND KM^2		.5					.5	.5	.4	5x5=25 Km^2

Notes:
(1) STPT/AVG TTT
(2) IMTS
(3) CFT
(4) VACR kit
(5) Tactical equipment (IFF, Stinger, and Avenger)
(6) THT
(7) FHT
(8) Tactical aircraft, if available
(8) Targets ($1/5^{th}$ scale or its equivalent)
(9) MILES
(10) See DA Pamphlet 350-38 Table 4-9 (Annual Ammunition Requirements for Avenger).
(11) OPTEMPO for reserves does not include movement from home station to training area.
(12) Avenger teams must certify quarterly on Table VI.
(13) Shoot-on-the-move range facilities.
(14) A—Annually SA—Semiannually Q—quarterly M—Monthly

Figure A-2. Avenger Training Strategy.

A-7. T&EO Collective Tasks The following T&EOs are collective tasks that the gunnery table will incorporate. The first five are mandatory.

Mandatory	Title	Page
Perform Risk Management Procedures	71-2-C326.44-A30H	5-126
Conduct LOGPAC Activities	44-4-2282.44-A30H	5-100
Plan Air Defense (SHORAD)	44-1-3534.44-A30H	5-57
Coordinate Air Defense (SHORAD)	44-1-5137.44-A30H	5-63
Conduct Air Defense Operations (SHORAD)	44-2-7008.44-A30H	5-73
Additional Collective Tasks		
Develop IPB (SHORAD)	44-4-2261.44-A30H	5-7
Conduct RSOP (SHORAD)	44-1-9046.44-A30H	5-10
Conduct a Convoy	55-2-C324.44-A30H	5-18
Prepare for Operations Under NBC Conditions	03-3-C201.44-A30H	5-22
React to Smoke Operations	03-3-C209.44-A30H	5-36
Conduct Operational Decontamination	03-3-C224.44-A30H	5-42
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	03-3-C226.44-A30H	5-49
Conduct Security of a Command Post	19-3-2205.44-A30H	5-51
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	44-1-C220.44-A30H	5-62
Take Active Combined Arms AD Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	44-1-C221.44-A30H	5-64
Maintain Operations Security	71-3-C232.44-A30H	5-71
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.44-A30H	5-74
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.44-A30H	5-80
Perform Field Sanitation Functions	08-2-R315.44-A30H	5-82
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War	19-3-3106.44-A30H	5-85
Perform Unit Level Maintenance	43-2-C322.44-A30H	5-87
Sustain Air Defense Operations (SHORAD)	44-1-1045.44-A30H	5-108
Provide Command and Control	44-1-2187.44-A30H	5-111
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	44-2-2294.44-A30H	5-113
Establish the Platoon CP	44-4-2160.44-A30H	5-116
Adjust Air Defense Coverage (SHORAD)	44-4-5143.44-A30H	5-120
Disseminate Early Warning	44-5-0003.44-A30H	5-122
Establish Liaison Team	44-5-2190.44-A30H	5-124

APPENDIX B

COMBAT READINESS OR DEPLOYABILITY CERTIFICATION CRITERIA

B-1. General. This appendix provides guidance for certifying the Avenger platoon in all divisions applicable to both AC and ARNG units. Deployability certification is the method of documenting that a unit is trained well enough on its basic SRC competencies (formerly base or basic METL). Basic SRC competencies are those tasks which a unit must perform to established standards to accomplish their TOE mission(s). Certification is required for all newly organized ADA units and all nondeployed ADA units that are issued a new weapon system. Combat readiness certification is the method of documenting that a deployed unit is trained well enough on its METL to perform its wartime mission with its newly issued weapon system. METL is defined as a compilation of collective mission-essential tasks which must be successfully performed if an organization is to accomplish its wartime mission(s). This appendix, in conjunction with DA Pamphlet 350-38, establishes the certification criteria. AC and ARNG battalions must qualify with their weapon system by DA Pamphlet 350-38 standards as a part of the certification process. Each MACOM is responsible for evaluation and certification of assigned AC units that require either type of certification. The adjutant general of each state is responsible for the certification of ARNG units in his state.

B-2. METL. The combat readiness certification evaluation is based on the rated unit's METL derived from that unit's wartime mission(s). The rated unit must submit an approved unit METL to the senior O/C before an evaluation begins. Evaluate nondeployed units on the basic SRC competencies at Figure B-4 on page B-6. For either type certification, the unit must perform all selected tasks to the standards established in Chapter 5.

B-3. Requirements. You may conduct a combat readiness or deployability certification evaluation simultaneously with an ARTEP MTP evaluation or as a separate evaluation. In either case, the certifying authority must provide O/Cs to assist in the evaluation and collect that data necessary to determine if the unit is qualified for deployment. These O/Cs must prepare and complete the following:

a. Evaluated Unit Data Sheets and Environmental Data Sheets in Chapter 6 before the evaluation starts and as data changes during the evaluation.

b. A Task Evaluation Work Sheet (Figure B-1, page B-4) for each task as it is performed (paragraph B-6 explains grading).

c. A Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet (Deployed Units) (Figure B-2, page B-5) for a combat readiness certification or Figure B-4 for a nondeployability certification evaluation after all tasks are performed (paragraph B-7 explains the use of these forms).

d. The Certification Statement at Figure B-3 (page B-6) if the unit is combat ready or the Certification Statement at Figure B-5 (page B-7) if the unit is deployable. Address battalion certifications to the battalion commander.

e. An AAR as explained in paragraph B-8.

f. A report as explained in paragraph B-9.

B-4. Preparation for Evaluation. To ensure an evaluation measures a unit's capabilities, the senior O/C must standardize evaluation procedures for all elements of the unit consistent with the training and evaluation guidance contained in this MTP. The evaluation scenario in Chapter 6 contains the events and

collective tasks necessary to execute an evaluation. Use it as a guide to develop a scenario which includes all elements of the battalion. You may include non-METL tasks to have a smooth-flowing evaluation scenario. Chapter 6 also lists equipment which O/Cs will require. Preparation for the evaluation should supplement and be according to information provided in FM 25-101.

B-5. Grading. Use standard grades and work sheets as explained below.

a. Standard grades are GO and NO-GO. (Record as NE those tasks which are not evaluated.) Grade definitions are as follows:

(1) GO. The element evaluated accomplished the standards with no unnecessary expenditure of resources, danger to troops, or misuse of equipment. Minor errors or delays did not affect task accomplishment.

(2) NO-GO. The element evaluated did not meet the standards. (Some of the following conditions existed: equipment, facilities, or resources were inadequate in number or condition. Safety or correct use of equipment was sacrificed. Delays caused nonaccomplishment of the task. The task was performed more than once using different procedures each time, some correct and some incorrect).

b. A sample Task Evaluation Work Sheet is at Figure B-1 on page B-4. This work sheet is self-explanatory and should be filled out by the O/C as the performing element demonstrates its proficiency on each task. In preparation for an evaluation, reproduce one Task Evaluation Work Sheet for each task to be evaluated. Provide narrative comments at paragraph 2 of the Task Evaluation Work Sheet for all tasks graded other than GO. These comments should address shortages of equipment and key personnel which would adversely affect task performance, and identification of any task or subtask (of the standards) that was not satisfactorily performed, et cetera.

B-6. Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet. The senior O/C will review the ratings submitted by subordinate O/Cs to decide if an accurate evaluation of training proficiency was conducted. Fill in the Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet (Figure B-2, page B-5) from the evaluated unit's METL for deployed units (paragraph B-3). The basic SRC competencies at Figure B-4 apply to nondeployed units. Use the applicable Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet to compile evaluation data for all tasks. Then use these compiled data to determine a recommended overall unit training rating of Combat Ready or Not Combat Ready, Deployable or Nondeployable. The evaluated unit must receive a GO on every collective task listed on its METL or basic SRC competencies to be certified. Develop the Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet before an evaluation starts. Do not use non-METL tasks in the scenario to determine deployability.

B-7. AAR. Using all the ratings, the senior O/C gives an AAR outlining the overall proficiency of unit performance. He discusses specific areas of strengths and weaknesses. He makes brief recommendations when appropriate. This action allows the battalion commander to take immediate corrective action while the results of the evaluation are still fresh in the minds of the participants. The AAR includes, but is not limited to, applicable information from the following list:

a. Did the unit operate effectively in a tactical environment?

b. Was the unit capable of sustained operations?

c. Was the unit able to perform its mission while operating in a hostile environment?

d. Did overall physical fitness of personnel in the unit restrict task performance?

e. What collective task(s), if any, needs additional training?

f. On what collective task(s), if any, does the unit excel?

g. Is the unit rated Combat Ready or Deployable?

Note: Report tasks performed correctly as a consequence of personnel temporarily assigned or attached to augment the unit's strength for evaluation purposes as NO-GO. The senior O/C's final report will, however, bring to full light the reason for this rating by addressing personnel shortages.

B-8. Report. The senior O/C prepares a written report to the certifying authority. It includes the Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet, a narrative about the evaluation results, and a recommended overall rating of Combat Ready or Not Combat Ready and Deployable or Nondeployable. If rated Combat Ready or Deployable (see AR 220-1), he includes a certification statement prepared for signature (Figure B-3, page B-6, or B-5, page B-7). A copy of this report is given to the commander of the evaluated unit.

TASK EVALUATION WORK SHEET

1. CONTROL DATA:

O/C: _____ DATE: _____

TASK NUMBER: _____ RATING: _____

2. NARRATIVE: Comments for ratings other than GO. (In determining the task rating, consider shortages of equipment and key personnel that had a bearing on the performance of the task. This may cause a rating of NO-GO, but should have appropriate remarks. Rate an element GO on a task only if it was performed to the stated task standard satisfactorily. If the task was not evaluated, explain why).

Figure B-1. Sample Task Evaluation Work Sheet.

CONSOLIDATED TASK EVALUATION WORK SHEET (DEPLOYED UNITS)		
TASK NUMBER AND TITLE	T&EO PAGE	RATING

Figure B-2. Sample Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet (Deployed Units).

Notes:

- Fill in task numbers and T&EO page numbers prior to the start of an evaluation (see paragraphs B-3 and B-7).
- Compile ratings from the Task Evaluation Work Sheets (see paragraph B-6b).

(Letterhead)

OFFICE SYMBOL (MARKS NUMBER) DATE

MEMORANDUM FOR: Commander, (full unit designation, including Battalion identification)

SUBJECT: Combat-Ready Certification

1. My designated O/Cs conducted the required evaluation of your unit on (date). This evaluation was conducted using the guidance and the task standards specified in ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP. Your unit performed all of its METL tasks satisfactorily and is considered capable of performing its combat mission.

2. The personnel of this Battalion have also proven their weapon system capability by meeting the applicable qualification standards specified in DA Pamphlet 350-38.

3. (Full unit designation) is hereby certified Combat Ready.

OFFICIAL SIGNATURE BLOCK
XXX, XX
Xxxxxxxxx, Xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

Figure B-3. Sample Deployed Unit Certification Statement.

CONSOLIDATED TASK EVALUATION WORK SHEET (NONDEPLOYED UNITS)		
TASK NUMBER AND TITLE	PAGE	RATING
44-4-2261.44-A30H DEVELOP IPB (SHORAD)	5-7	
44-1-9046.44-A30H CONDUCT RSOP (SHORAD)	5-10	
03-3-C201.44-A30H PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NBC CONDITIONS	5-22	
44-1-1045.44-A30H SUSTAIN AIR DEFENSE OPERATIONS (SHORAD)	5-107	
44-1-2187.44-A30H PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL	5-100	
44-1-3534.44-A30H PLAN AIR DEFENSE (SHORAD)	5-55	
44-2-2294.44-A30H CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	5-112	
44-5-2190.44-A30H ESTABLISH LIAISON TEAM	5-123	

Figure B-4. Sample Consolidated Task Evaluation Work Sheet (Nondeployed Units).

Note: Compile rating from Task Evaluation Work Sheets (see paragraph B-6b).

(Letterhead)

OFFICE SYMBOL (MARKS NUMBER) DATE

MEMORANDUM FOR: Commander, (full unit designation, including battalion identification)

SUBJECT: Deployability Certification

1. My designated O/Cs conducted the required evaluation of your unit on (date). This evaluation was conducted using the guidance and the task standards specified in ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP. Your unit performed all of its basic SRC competencies satisfactorily and is considered capable of performing its combat mission.

2. The personnel of this battalion have also proven their weapon system capability by meeting the applicable qualification standards specified in DA Pamphlet 350-38.

3. (Full unit designation) is hereby certified Deployable.

OFFICIAL SIGNATURE BLOCK
XXX, XX
Xxxxxxxxx, Xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

Figure B-5. Sample Nondeployed Unit Certification Statement.

APPENDIX C

AIR THREAT TO THE AVENGER PLATOON

C-1. General. The aerial threat to US forces conducting force-projection operations will consist of BM, CM, TASM, RISTA, UAV, RPV, armed UAVs and RPVs, RW aircraft, and limited numbers of FW aircraft. These FW aircraft are those aircraft that friendly air forces are unable to destroy (approximately 10 percent of the enemy's total FW assets).

a. Complementary Efforts. Ground-based air defense will have the primary mission of countering enemy missiles, UAVs, RPVs, and RW aircraft. Friendly air forces can neutralize most of the FW aircraft.

b. Force Projection. According to FM 100-5, the execution of force projection operations is envisioned as a series of operational phases: early entry, expansion buildup, decisive operations, and reconstitution.

C-2. Division Threat. Avenger units will provide force protection for friendly units during all phases of force-projection operations. In particular, they will focus on and defeat the low-altitude threat that includes: UAVs and RPVs (both RISTA and armed), RW aircraft, and FW aircraft.

a. If deployed during early operations, the Avenger units will counter UAVs and RPVs conducting RISTA operations, FW aircraft conducting deep strikes against friendly early entry forces and sites, and possible armed UAVs and RPVs.

b. During the expansion buildup of combat power, Avenger units continue countering UAVs and RPVs in the RISTA role, defeat armed UAVs and RPVs targeted against radars and C^3I nodes and assets, and protect against limited RW aircraft possibly conducting airmobile operations. FW aircraft will be conducting deep attacks and possibly RISTA.

c. During decisive operations, Avenger units will counter enemy UAVs and RPVs to prevent surprise and accurate targeting information, RW aircraft conducting airmobile and air insertions, and any FW aircraft conducting deep strikes.

d. During reconstitution, when friendly units are rearming, refitting, and refueling as they prepare for subsequent operations, Avenger units will counter low-altitude aerial threats attempting to target and/or disrupt friendly reconstitution efforts.

C-3. Threat Attack Profiles. All division Avenger personnel must become proficient in OPFOR air attack mission profiles to use their weapon systems effectively. FM 44-80 describes these profiles in detail.

WARNING

Terrorist Threat. Avenger units present lucrative vulnerable targets for terrorist operations due to their small size, dispersion, and highly transportable air defense weapons. To counter this threat, you must obtain current information from servicing S2 and MI units, incorporate it into every phase of training planning, and include it in TSOPs.

APPENDIX D

TACTICAL INTERNET

SECTION I. INTRODUCTION

D-1. This appendix provides the platoon leader with a basic understanding of the tactical Internet, capabilities, and limitations. The digitized battery in support of the digitized BCT is equipped with the most modern, automated command and control systems available in the Army.

D-2. The major components of the digitized platoon are incorporated into the Force XXI battle command brigade and below ($FBCB^2$) concept. These enhancements center around brigade and below command and control (B^2C^2) systems, and compatible digital communications systems. The central components addressed in this appendix are—

- Battery command post (CP).
- Platoon command post (CP).
- Section CP.
- Fire unit.

D-3. The term digitized platoon is used throughout this manual to refer to the platoon equipped with digitized components (Appliqué). There are numerous other automated systems in the Army that may have some effect on digitized platoon operations. These systems are addressed in this appendix only as they relate to digitized platoon operations.

D-4. The digitized platoon possesses an improved capability to achieve the agility, depth, and synchronization that characterize successful Army operations. The platoon leader must fully understand and selectively employ these improved capabilities during the execution of a mission to maintain synchronization with both digitized and conventionally equipped units. Leaders at every level must remain cognizant of the fact that some critical combat and combat support assets may be unable to share the timesaving benefits of automation in receiving, processing, and distributing combat information. Careful planning and use of both voice and digitized communications must be used to ensure nondigitized combat, CS, and CSS units remain in the loop, while taking full advantage of the capabilities digitization provides.

D-5. This appendix addresses the capabilities and limitations of the digitized platoon in support of the digitized task force, operating with digitized and conventional combat, CS, and CSS assets. It also addresses the additional planning and command and control functions performed within the digitally-equipped platoon. It defines the use of B^2C^2 technology within the framework of the seven battlefield operating systems (BOS). Finally, this appendix provides an overview of the operational concept for the digitized platoon in both offensive and defensive operations.

SECTION II. CAPABILITIES AND LIMITATIONS

D-6. The digitized platoon possesses capabilities and limitations distinctly separate from its conventionally equipped predecessor. These enhancements center on the $FBCB^2$ concept. The sensor/C^2 node's Sentinel sensor, the Avenger's standard vehicle-mounted launchers (SVML) slew-to-cue (STC) provide additional capabilities for the platoon leader, not available in conventionally equipped ADA units. Along with these capabilities, however, are limitations in interfacing with both digitized and conventional combat and CS assets typically arrayed within a task force.

D-7. Other automated systems that enhance the performance of the digitized platoon are—

- FAAD command, control, communications, computers and intelligence (C^4I).
- Position lightweight GPS receiver (PLGR).
- Enhanced position location and reporting system (EPLRS).
- The digitized soldier.
- Various digital intelligence distribution systems.

This appendix addresses these systems only as they relate to the operations of the digitized battery.

CAPABILITIES

D-8. The platoon leader of the digitized platoon has significant advantages over his conventionally equipped counterpart. The most significant advantages are—

- Increased situational awareness.
- Enhancements to the planning and orders preparation and distribution process.
- Digital aids that enhance the timeliness and accuracy of the reporting process and employment of platoon assets.

The platoon leader employs some or all of these enhancements to improve the combat potential of his platoon based on the factors of METT-TC.

SITUATIONAL AWARENESS

D-9. The increased situational awareness provided to the platoon leader and his subordinates, due to B^2C^2, is a significant aid to platoon command and control. Digital systems enable the platoon leader to receive, process, and distribute combat data to subordinate squads in near real time. By observing his tactical display, the platoon leader can see icons representing the location of friendly elements operating on the battery/BCT FM radio or EPLRS communications net. The friendly unit icons are created through automatic position updates digitally broadcast by each of the ADA's and other BOS's B^2C^2. The platoon leader can also display the unit's operations overlays on his tactical display screen to see the unit's locations relative to established control measures. Some digital systems (B^2C^2) also provide a terrain database that allows the platoon leader to see friendly units locations relative to the actual terrain features on the map. When used correctly, IVIS and B^2C^2 provide the platoon leader and his subordinate leaders with a good idea of the location and disposition of ADA digitally-equipped units, as well as other combat and CS digitally-equipped units. With this information, the platoon leader will be able to make informed decisions and respond quickly and decisively to make changes in the tactical situation.

D-10. Improved situational awareness also permits the platoon leader to increase lateral dispersion and depth within platoon and/or subordinate unit formations, enhancing survivability and reducing the chance of fratricide. Digital systems speed tactical and logistical reporting procedures, as well as the exchange of command and control information between echelons (platoon/squads/battery and BCT). Effectiveness, however, depends on the ability to keep the system updated. This is especially true of the enemy situation. The enemy situation will only be updated based on manual inputs by either the unit in contact or through the S2. Updating the enemy situation becomes difficult for a unit in contact because the unit will default to voice communications as a faster and easier way to pass information. An element of the unit not in contact needs to be designated to input the information into the digital system so other elements of the unit and task force receive the tactical Internet information. The above procedure should be addressed in the platoon SOPs.

COMMAND AND CONTROL

D-11. The tactical Internet enhances the command and control of the digitized platoon. The platoon leader has the ability to receive, process, and distribute combat information (warning orders, FRAGOs, OPORDs, and overlays) in near real time. The battery commander receives enemy locations from the battalion and supported unit S2 and subordinate spot reports. The commander or XO sends that information to the supporting force. The supporting force staff combines spot report information with ASAS data and information from higher and adjacent units. The BCT S2 combines the information into a common picture of the battlespace using MCS/P. The battery commander and subordinate leaders receive the enemy disposition as a graphic overlay.

PLANNING PROCESS

D-12. B^2C^2 provides significant enhancements to the platoon planning process. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders can digitally issue warning orders (WO) with draft operations overlays early in the orders process to allow subordinate leaders to begin their troop-leading procedures, rehearsals, and reconnaissance much sooner than previously possible. The unit can significantly speed up the distribution of CS overlays, such as fire support, enemy, and obstacle overlays, by using and coordinating existing information, prior to the actual issuance of the operations order (OPORD). When the unit has completed the planning process and is prepared to issue the OPORD, the unit digitally sends updated operational overlays to subordinate leaders prior to the issuance of the OPORD. This allows units to initiate actions at their level while the platoon leader is occupied elsewhere. There are many other ways the digitized platoon can use digital communications to enhance the planning process. METT-TC and the creativity of the unit determine how they can most effectively use the digital systems available to them.

REPORTING

D-13. The ability to digitally send tactical reports can aid the platoon leader and his subordinate leaders in shaping the battlefield and reacting to changing tactical situations. The B^2C^2 system has preformatted reports a user can quickly produce and send. Contact reports and spot reports (SPOTREPs) are the primary combat reports used to help the platoon leader and his subordinate leaders develop the tactical situation. The initiator of the report can create an enemy icon on his tactical display by lasing to a potential target. He then has the option to digitally send that icon, with some descriptive text, up the chain of command as a contact or SPOTREP. Upon receipt of the report, the recipient can review the report and the location of the enemy icon and has the option to forward it to higher headquarters. At each level of the chain of command, the recipient of the report can look at the location of the reported enemy element and compare it to his operational graphics and friendly unit locations to determine if there is a potential problem with the disposition or orientation of friendly units and adjust accordingly. Additionally, all contact and SPOTREPs can be converted into calls for fire or close air support (CAS) requests with one additional button push at any level of the reporting hierarchy.

D-14. There are also automated logistics reports available to aid the platoon leader and his subordinate leaders. Situation reports (SITREPs) and medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) requests assist the unit in assessing the logistics status of subordinate units and in pushing necessary support forward.

LIMITATIONS

D-15. Even with the significant capabilities of the digital systems, there are some limitations. The most significant limitations are—

- Digital systems may not be installed in some key combat, CS, or CSS elements.
- Digital hardware and software may have physical limitations.
- Digital communications on FM radios and EPLRS communications nets require precise procedures and strict net discipline.
- Digital to nondigital information/data exchanges (and vice versa) require additional resource and time expenditures.

D-16. At the platoon level, digital and voice data are carried over the SINCGARS radio. If digital and voice data are sent at the same time, the digital message may be lost. A communications SOP must be developed to ensure the platoon does not experience contention when using the radio.

D-17. Units default to voice communications only when in contact. This results in digital dead time when the tactical Internet situational awareness may not reflect the known situation. Platoon leaders must develop an SOP to designate a person to continue inputting information into the digital system when the platoon is using voice communications, so that the unit, the supported force, and adjacent units are kept abreast of the situation in sector.

NONDIGITAL UNITS

D-18. The integration of conventionally equipped (nondigital) elements within the task force presents special challenges for the digitized platoon leader and his subordinate leaders. The unit must specify specific procedures for communicating both digitally and by voice. The control measures used on digital overlays must be identical to the hard-copy overlays, and the platoon leader must make provisions for the nondigital unit to receive automated information with the rest of the unit. Additionally, nondigital adjacent units will not have the benefit of the automated information sharing capabilities. Units will have to establish liaison officers (LNOs) or other positive control measures to ensure proper coordination is completed. Several techniques for accomplishing these tasks are addressed in FM 44-64.

HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE LIMITATIONS

D-19. With increased reliance on digital technology come limitations of the hardware and software associated with the systems. Each version of software used in these digital communications systems has peculiarities unique to that system. The user has relatively little flexibility in terms of what types of messages can be sent and what graphic control measures are available for use on overlays. The hardware has limitations as well. The current electronic technology is not perfected for a single communications net to host both voice and digital traffic simultaneously. The result is at times the two conflict with one another, resulting in degraded performance in digital traffic, voice traffic, or both. There are also limitations in the memory capabilities of the computer systems used. When messages, or in particular overlays, exceed the system's memory capabilities, units will experience difficulty transmitting the message or overlay. Given these limitations, the platoon leader must decide when the use of digital reporting is counterproductive. There are some cases, such as during offensive operations, when voice reporting may be more expedient and digital reports are used as follow-up reports. Each of these shortcomings has solutions and is presented simply to illustrate that digital technology, although powerful, is not yet mature. The remainder of this appendix is devoted to identifying situations and

establishing procedures that allow digital systems to serve as effective combat multipliers for the digitized platoon.

SECTION III. ORGANIZATION AND FUNCTIONS

D-20. This section highlights the additional capabilities and functions the digital communications systems bring to key leaders within the digitized battery. The digitized battery is equipped with the most modern, automated command and control system available in the Army.

BATTERY COMMANDER

D-21. The role of the battery commander is essentially unchanged from that described in FMs 44-43 and 44-64. With improvements to the ADA sensor and weapon systems, the battery commander now has at his disposal timely and highly accurate friendly and enemy information. This permits the battery commander to see the battlefield with improved clarity. The net effect has increased situational awareness. The battery commander will be able to see the battlefield more clearly and potentially will be able to make more informed tactical decisions. When properly positioned, digitized units provide the battery commander with continuous and highly reliable combat information necessary to make timely battlefield decisions.

SUBORDINATE LEADERS

D-22. Platoon leaders and squad leaders directly influence the battle by employing their ADA systems to ensure air defense coverage of the task force and critical assets. They are the battery commander's principle means of fighting the battle. Subordinate leaders use digitally generated combat information to guide the employment of their sensor and weapon systems and synchronize the use of combat support assets provided to them by the task force battery commander. When operating task-organized with nondigitally-equipped units, battery commanders and section chiefs exploit the position location capabilities of their systems to fix the location of the enemy and issue pertinent instructions by voice.

COMBAT SUPPORT

D-23. The battery commander and subordinate leaders use selected CS assets (field artillery, CAS, engineers, military intelligence, and chemical units) to integrate and synchronize combat multipliers in support of operational plans. Digital interfaces with these elements tighten their integration into the planning process and improve their situational awareness during tactical operations. Most or all of these elements at the task force level will have some access to digital communications systems, although task-organized elements, such as individual engineer squads, may not. Integration of these elements presents special challenges at battery and below. The battery commander and subordinate leaders need to ensure information from maneuver digital nets is passed on to supporting CS elements. As stated previously, the battery commander and subordinate leaders must make special provisions for these elements to receive and send vital information passed on the digital nets.

SECTION IV. OPERATIONAL CONCEPT

D-24. The introduction of the digitized battery with its weapon and sensor system enhancements and automated tactical reporting presents unique opportunities and operational challenges for the battery

commander and subordinate leaders. This section briefly illustrates several tactical situations where the advanced capabilities of the digitized battery can be effectively exploited. Specific techniques and procedures for the employment of digitized units in various types of combat operations are discussed in detail in FM 44-64.

OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

D-25. During offensive operations, the digitized battery has some unique capabilities. The POSNAV system and automated reporting functions make the digitized battery particularly well suited to provide air defense coverage for lead maneuver units in a deliberate attack or for the advance guard in a movement to contact. There are some limitations, however, in digital reporting capabilities during offensive operations. The physical difficulties of manipulating buttons while moving and the speed in which events occur make digital reporting, while in contact in offensive operations, difficult at best. The battery commander must establish SOPs for automated reporting to maximize the advantages of digital reporting without being encumbered by the system.

D-26. Automated reporting is useful for synchronizing the scheme of maneuver during unexpected contingencies such as identification of enemy obstacles. In this situation, battery, in conjunction with lead maneuver units, can identify, designate, and transmit the left and right limits of the obstacle system, bypass routes, or suitable breach sites to the BCT commander. The battery can digitally issue FRAGOs to subordinate units as he adjusts the air defense plan in support of the BCT's adjusted plan. Automated reporting can also be used to warn forces of chemical hazards. As supported force or ADA elements identify contaminated areas, the battery commander or subordinate leaders can use digitally provided bypass lanes and updated enemy situational templates/Operations 2 overlay to modify the scheme of maneuver to avoid the contamination.

D-27. The battery CP personnel use combat information (for example, avenues of approach and types of enemy aerial platforms detected and their location) to analyze the enemy’s disposition and advise the battery commander on changes to the enemy situation. This information can be forwarded to the BCT to assist in formulating changes to the enemy overlay or the scheme of maneuver. This exchange of automated combat information provides the supported force commander with critical information necessary to maintain and exploit the initiative during offensive operations.

D-28. Upon the conclusion of offensive operations, the digitized battery commander begins consolidation and reorganization operations. Subordinate units occupying predetermined positions marked with automated checkpoints digitally provided by the supported force complete consolidation. If necessary, the battery commander can issue new control measures to reorient subordinate units. The reorganization phase is initiated with subordinate units sending automated SITREPs on the administrative/logistics (A/L) net to initiate A/L resupply.

DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

D-29. The battery commander’s air defense plan must support the supported force scheme of maneuver. The battery commander’s plan must address air defense coverage during all phases of the defense. The battery commander needs to mass enough forces at the critical place and time to defeat the enemy helicopters, UAVs, CAS fixed-wing assets, and deny aerial surveillance of friendly assets. ADA weapon systems must be integrated and remain within ADA employment guidelines. The plan needs to address air defense of deep, close, and rear operations.

D-30. Upon receipt of the WO from the BCT main CP, the commander prepares and digitally transmits his WO to subordinate units. He develops his air defense plan and digitally transmits this to the BCT main CP. Upon receipt of the battery WO, platoons move to their battle positions and begin defensive preparations. Platoon leaders and section chiefs begin to digitally coordinate their plans with their supported force. Air defense information (for example, sectors of search and primary target lines) can be digitally assigned and forwarded to higher echelons. This information is then integrated into the air defense plan and forwarded to the supported force. The BCT leaders can review the air defense plan to see if it meets the intent. Digital transmission of all information speeds ups the entire process and provides opportunities to better plan all aspects of an operation.

D-31. The battery commander and/or XO assist the BCT in the completion of the planning process. Final operations graphics are digitally transmitted to all units. Units make refinements or adjustments prior to receiving the final supported force OPORD. Upon return from receiving the OPORD, the battery commander should conduct rehearsals and complete his troop-leading procedures.

D-32. When enemy aerial platforms are detected, the digitized battery reports enemy locations using a combination of voice and digital reporting. Digital contact and SPOTREPs are well suited for reporting during defensive operations. The battery commander monitors his tactical display screens and issues voice and digital orders to make adjustments necessary to counter the enemy threat. If necessary, the battery commander issues voice FRAGOs and automated graphics to reposition forces. Time permitting, the battery commander issues updated operations overlays to adjust his scheme of maneuver.

SECTION V. COMMAND AND CONTROL

D-33. This section describes command and control techniques and procedures that exploit the unique capabilities of automated forces. It is designed to assist the ADA battery, CP personnel, and subordinate leaders to realize the advantages of automated information exchange during the planning and execution phases of combat operations.

D-34. To be successful in battle, commanders must make sound decisions rapidly. The digitized battery has enhanced capabilities with which to command and control their units. CP personnel assist the battery commander in making these decisions and translating them into coherent plans and changes to the scheme of maneuver. Units must act quickly and decisively once changes are received to gain or retain the initiative and defeat the enemy.

COMMAND AND CONTROL RESPONSIBILITIES AND FACILITIES

D-35. The digitized battery maintains the same basic division of responsibility among key leaders as outlined in FM 44-64. Digitization, however, provides the tactical Internet equipped battery with additional capabilities (information sharing and situational awareness) that modify the manner key leaders execute command and control responsibilities. The automated battery exercises its command and control function from a CP equipped with all C^4I POSNAV systems. CP equipment and personnel should be continuously uploaded in the vehicles where all battlefield analysis functions are conducted. This equipment and personnel make seamless information exchange between combat, CS, and CSS assets now possible during the planning, coordination, and execution of combat operations. This section highlights how the battery commander, section chiefs, and squad leaders use digitized systems to accomplish command and control duties and responsibilities.

BATTERY COMMANDER

D-36. The battery commander plans, prepares, and executes tactical operations. He uses the tactical Internet system to streamline not only the planning and preparation stages, but also the execution of combat operations. He has the capability to send digitized maneuver, fire support, and enemy and obstacle overlays to subordinate leaders. The battery commander exercises command and control functions using both voice and digital communications. B^2C^2 situation reporting provides the battery commander with a graphical representation of pertinent aspects of the scheme of maneuver, such as situational templates, indirect fire plan, and maneuver control measures as well as enemy and friendly position location information. Precise and continuous (real time) updating of both the friendly and enemy situation provides the battery commander with critical combat information necessary to effectively control and synchronize combat operations once contact or detection is made.

D-37. The battery commander performs the majority of his command and control functions prior to contact/detection by monitoring his respective displays. Once contact/detection is made and the initial automated contact or SPOTREP is received, the battery commander transitions to voice reporting to issue instructions and develop the situation. CP personnel assist the battery commander by modifying existing overlays (operations and enemy) to depict the current tactical situation and by distributing them digitally to subordinate units. This process provides the battery commander with timely and accurate position location information on both friendly and enemy units. This facilitates rapid and coordinated execution of revised plans and orders.

D-38. During offensive operations, the battery commander receives automated and voice tactical reports from his platoons. He analyzes these reports, evaluates possible courses of action, issues appropriate orders, and executes his plan using capabilities provided by FAAD C^2 FO and tactical Internet. He monitors unit movements in relation to known (icon) and suspected (templated) enemy locations. The tactical Internet allows the battery commander to quickly gain positional advantage over the enemy and mass the effects of his unit's combat power at the decisive point.

D-39. During defensive operations, the battery commander controls his platoons using the digitized sector sketch. As the enemy closes on his position, he uses primary target lines (PTLs) and sectors of responsibility as the primary method of fire distribution and control. At the conclusion of all tactical operations, the battery commander can quickly review internal logistical status reports.

EXECUTIVE OFFICER

D-40. The XO, as second in command, assists in command and control of the battery. He receives, verifies, and consolidates automated tactical reports from the platoons/sections, and forwards them digitally to the BCT TOC. The battery commander or PSG sends these reports to the BCT TOCs. This process reduces voice communications between echelons and reduces the susceptibility of intervehicular communications to enemy electronic countermeasures (ECM). The XO performs the following:

- Before a battle, the XO ensures the digital network link is complete and the unit has updated its PLGR devices. These pre-execution checks ensure digitized communication between locations and positive navigational reporting of the unit to TF headquarters. The XO also transmits battery maneuver graphics and the air defense plan for integration into higher and adjacent unit plans. The XO must pass overlay information to subordinate and adjacent units to increase SA and allow for subordinate planning.
- During a battle, the XO tracks the battle and reports unit status to higher headquarters. If established by unit SOP, the XO may be required to transpose voice reports into digital input (primarily for enemy situation, as the friendly situation is updated automatically through EPLRS).

- After a battle, the XO collects SITREPs from platoons/sections and reviews ammunition, fuel, personnel, and vehicle status. Critical supply and equipment or personnel shortages are reported by exception to the BCT CP.

COMMAND POST

D-41. The battery CP is the control, coordination, and communications center for combat operations within the platoon. It facilitates the synchronization of combat operations by integrating CS and CSS into the scheme of maneuver, facilitates planning of future operations, and assists in command and control by maintaining contact and coordination with higher, subordinate, and adjacent units. The CP can operate in a dispersed mode during both mobile and stationary operations to increase survivability.

D-42. External communication with higher or adjacent units is accomplished digitally via B^2C^2during the planning, preparation, and execution of combat operations. B^2C^2 provides increased functionality in that it has greater flexibility in tailoring automated overlays and tactical reports. This minimizes the need for lengthy voice radio transmissions and significantly improves the precision of combat information received.

PLATOON LEADERS/PLATOON SERGEANTS/SQUAD LEADERS

D-43. The platoon leaders/platoon sergeants/squad leaders retain responsibility for the tactical employment and logistics of their platoons/squads. They inform the commander and the XO on the tactical situation by using automated contact and SPOTREPs. Voice communications are kept to a minimum prior to contact to facilitate the timely transmission and receipt of automated reports.

D-44. The platoon leaders/platoon sergeants/squad leaders monitor ammunition and fuel status of their platoons/squads through periodic automated SITREPs submitted from individual fire units/teams. Requests for emergency resupply are reported by exception using standard voice report formats. After the battle, the platoon leader/platoon sergeant/squad leader consolidates digital SITREPs from the sections/squads and forwards an aggregate SITREP digitally to the battery XO.

FIRST SERGEANT

D-45. The first sergeant’s combat service support requirements remain the same. The methods available to fulfill these requirements are greatly enhanced. Using the digital system, the 1SG consolidates the unit’s logistics SITREPs and ensures support operations are being conducted through the CTCP.

SUPPLY

D-46. The battery XO, 1SG, and supply sergeant plan and coordinate sustainment for tactical operations and provide command and control for resupply efforts. They monitor and update the CSS status of the platoon by monitoring the command and administrative/logistics nets and by reviewing digital (B^2C^2) reports. SITREPs are aggregated with information received from voice reports rendered by the unit to determine the logistical status of the platoon. This information is transferred into digital report formats and forwarded to supported force CPs.

D-47. The battery XO, 1SG, and supply sergeant plan and coordinate sustainment for tactical operations and provide C^2 for resupply efforts. They monitor and update the CSS status of the battery by monitoring command and administrative/logistics nets, and reviewing digital reports. SITREPs are aggregated with information received from voice reports rendered by the unit to determine the logistical status of the battery. This information is transferred into digital report formats and can be forwarded higher. The 1SG or supply NCO can be used to assist the CTCP in conducting supply operations for the unit.

D-48. The XO, 1SG, and supply NCO continually assess the logistical posture of the battery, anticipate requirements, and push necessary support forward as the tactical situation permits. The XO, 1SG, PSG, and section SGT monitor the tactical situation on digital displays and forward MEDEVAC requests to the medical battery commander in the supported force aid station as required. They also use the personnel information contained within the automated SITREP to initiate replacement operations.

SECTION VI. THE PLANNING PROCESS

D-49. The planning process is a systematic approach to formulating tactical plans that involve the interrelated processes of troop-leading procedures, the estimate of the situation (METT-TC), and IPB. The availability of time and other resources drives the planning process; however, automation eases the burden of planning by automating various steps in the process. This section outlines automated techniques and procedures the battery commander and his staff can employ to conserve time.

TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES
TIME MANAGEMENT

D-50. Time management techniques used throughout the conduct of tactical operations must incorporate standard troop-leading procedures. This is combined with leveraging of available automated systems to maximize the time available to plan, prepare, and ultimately execute a mission. Key considerations for time management include—

- Available sunlight.
- Impact on subordinates.
- Time to supervise and conduct precombat checks and inspections.
- Simplicity as an inherent aspect of the plan.

D-51. A deliberate timeline is developed and managed throughout the planning and preparation process to facilitate the execution of the mission. The battery commander and CP personnel should implement troop-leading procedures that promote the flow of available information and facilitate parallel planning among the CP and subordinate units. The battery commander should implement a process that digitally disseminates critical information through a series of WOs culminating with an OPORD, subsequent backbriefs, and rehearsals.

D-52. The collection, analysis, and distribution of information are a continuous staff requirement during the formulation of a tactical plan. Troop-leading procedures structure this process and ensure that time is used wisely. The integration of automated information sharing into the troop-leading process speeds the distribution of crucial information within the platoon and supported force. Each step in the troop-leading process is examined to illustrate the impact of automation.

RECEIVE THE MISSION

D-53. The digitized battery receives the mission in the form of a WO, OPORD, or FRAGO. Upon receipt of the order, the commander and CP personnel exchange information and conduct a preliminary METT-TC analysis to gather pertinent information for a platoon WO. Simultaneously, CP personnel conduct a mission analysis, formulate the restated mission, and develop an initial time analysis.

D-54. The time analysis is critical as it affects both planning and execution of combat operations. Backward planning timelines are useful for producing a schedule of critical events that must occur. Available time also affects the commander's decision to adopt a particular method of developing the OPORD. Automation can shorten the orders preparation and dissemination process when CP personnel prepare annotated overlays accompanied by voice implementing instructions.

D-55. Once the commander has approved or modified the restated mission recommended by the staff, he issues his planning guidance. The commander includes in his guidance how he envisions employing automated subordinate units. He might also task CP personnel to specifically develop courses of action that exploit the information sharing advantage provided by automated command and control systems.

D-56. Although the fifth step in the troop-leading process is reconnaissance, the commander may elect to conduct his reconnaissance at this time instead of later. The automated information sharing capabilities of combat vehicles through digital systems support this type of change in routine. As an example, the commander can conduct terrain walks concurrently with the development of the plan. Continuity is maintained throughout the orders process by the automated distribution of annotated digital overlays followed by brief voice implementing instructions. This technique enables section/squad leaders to implement a plan with greater precision and in less time than if they were required to personally receive the OPORD.

ISSUE A WARNING ORDER

D-57. The CP issues a WO to subordinates immediately upon receipt of a WO from higher headquarters. An updated WO is prepared and sent after the commander issues his planning guidance. Normally, the WO is issued to subordinate units by voice. An alternative to issuing the WO by voice is to append the WO to an operations overlay with a short free text message. In this way, the platoon minimizes its electronic warfare signature and reduces the likelihood of the WO being intercepted or the unit being targeted for indirect fire.

MAKE A TENTATIVE PLAN

D-58. Development of a tentative plan involves the interaction of both the commander and CP personnel. The command estimate is an integral part of the platoon decision-making process. Rather than repeat procedures published elsewhere, this section describes additional considerations the commander and CP personnel must address when formulating the tentative plan. The command estimate serves as the vehicle for discussing the application of automation to the decision-making process.

D-59. The analysis of the situation, specifically the friendly situation, must include an assessment of the platoon's capability to employ automated command and control techniques and procedures at various echelons (such as platoon or section). This step in the estimate process is designed to assist in determining the status of friendly forces relative to the type of operation to be conducted. Integral to this process is a review of the composition of subordinate units and identification of command and support

relationships. Focusing on the ability of subordinate units to digitally exchange information across echelons enables the CP to assess the advantages and disadvantages of implementing automated command and control techniques. This information aids the battery commander in selecting a particular course of action later in the estimate process.

D-60. Once an analysis of the situation is complete, probable courses of action are developed. Consideration should be given to making initial contact with a fully automated force in order to exploit enhanced target acquisition and information sharing capabilities. Based on the comparison of courses of action, the commander chooses or modifies one course of action and provides guidance to CP personnel in the form of a concept of operation. The tentative plan results from the commander's guidance and concept, and becomes the basis for the final plan. The plan consists of task organization, a mission statement, scheme of maneuver, and operations overlay.

INITIATE MOVEMENT

D-61. An initial time-distance analysis should have been conducted upon receipt of a mission to determine when units must start movement in order to conduct the mission on time. This analysis determines if there is sufficient time to issue the OPORD before any movement begins. If movement occurs concurrently with planning, the movement route is included on an automated operations overlay. Pertinent implementing instructions (movement times) are posted to the movement overlay as a free text message and distributed digitally.

CONDUCT RECONNAISSANCE

D-62. Reconnaissance is conducted concurrently with the planning process. To facilitate this, the battery commander prepares and distributes an automated reconnaissance plan to initiate movement. This is accomplished by assigning subordinate units specific critical points that correspond to reconnaissance objectives. Other pertinent control measures such as a limit of advance, contact points, and tentative battle positions are also included. This technique enables units to designate assigned critical points as way points and use POSNAV to navigate to reconnaissance objectives. Upon arrival, units conduct a physical reconnaissance, considering the effects of METT-TC on the tentative plan, and annotate findings on their automated operations overlay. At a predetermined time, subordinate leaders forward the results of their reconnaissance digitally to the platoon CP. This information is used to support or confirm the commander’s guidance or to make necessary changes to the plan. When required, section/squad leaders physically link up with the battery commander to backbrief the results of their reconnaissance.

COMPLETE THE PLAN

D-63. The plan is refined based on information gathered during the reconnaissance. Once the plan is finalized, automated overlays (such as operations, enemy, fire support, and engineer) are updated. During this process, the CP must exercise discretion in determining which control measures should be included in the overlay. The size of the screen, coupled with limitations in creating doctrinally correct operational symbols, prohibits a direct transfer of control measures from an acetate overlay to its tactical Internet equivalent.

D-64. The completed operations overlay, annotated with the battery mission statement and instructions to subordinate units (task and purpose), is transmitted digitally to subordinate leaders in advance of the OPORD to allow them time to post pertinent overlays to their maps. This technique permits subordinates

to familiarize themselves with their role in the platoon scheme of maneuver prior to receiving the OPORD and to identify issues that affect implementation of the plan.

ISSUE THE ORDER

D-65. B^2C^2 lacks the capability to send comprehensive matrix-type OPORDs. Therefore, the order is issued in the manner described in existing doctrinal publications.

SUPERVISE

D-66. Once orders are issued, the commander and subordinate leaders supervise preparation for combat by conducting backbriefs, inspections, and rehearsals. Backbriefs present the commander and his subordinate leaders with an opportunity to state their intent for automated reporting during the mission. They should include event driven triggers to move to voice reporting during the mission, to preclude confusion. This is also a good time to review procedures for initiating automated versus voice requests for fire support.

D-67. If time permits full rehearsals, the commander and subordinate leaders should practice sending automated tactical reports according to the platoon's SOP and the commander's intent. Emphasis is placed on minimizing FM voice transmissions prior to contact/detection of the enemy to ensure timely receipt of automated reporting. Rehearsals also provide leaders the opportunity to review and refine criteria that triggers moving from automated to voice reporting.

AUTOMATED IPB PROCESS

D-68. IPB is a systematic and continuous process of analyzing the enemy, weather, and terrain in a specific area of operation. The IPB process integrates enemy doctrine with weather and terrain and postulates how these factors will influence the enemy’s scheme of maneuver. The functions of the IPB process (to determine the battlefield environment, describe the battlefield’s effects, evaluate the threat, and determine threat courses of action) are unchanged by fielding automated command and control systems. Automation, however, expedites the passing of IPB products from BCT to battery and platoons. Using the All Source Analysis System (ASAS), intelligence products developed at the brigade can be easily and quickly transmitted to subordinate units. After refinement, the situation template becomes the basis for the automated situation overlay.

ABBREVIATED DECISION-MAKING PROCESS

D-69. The abbreviated decision-making process retains all steps in the traditional decision-making process; however, time spent completing each step is compressed. Tactical Internet is integrated into this process using a combination of automated overlays annotated with free text messages to convey key aspects of a scheme of maneuver. This technique significantly reduces the time spent developing and distributing combat orders and maximizes planning time at the platoon and section/squad leader’s level.

SECTION VII. COMMAND POST OPERATIONS

D-70. CP operations include those actions taken to assist key leaders in analyzing enemy information, developing and recommending courses of action, tracking the battle, synchronizing combat multipliers, and reporting to adjacent and higher headquarters. This section outlines specific functions of the CPs in two distinct but interrelated areas: precombat functions and combat functions.

COMMAND POST

D-71. CP functions are identical to that of a nondigital CP except key functions are automated. First, personnel develop and distribute automated overlays (B^2C^2) from the CP. Second, personnel use the displays during the battle to track positions and activities of both friendly and enemy forces. Finally, the CP facilitates revision of existing overlays based on real-time intelligence gathered from the battlefield and plans follow-on operations.

PRECOMBAT FUNCTIONS

D-72. During preparation for combat, the CP uses the B^2C^2 system to speed distribution of combat orders and to monitor reconnaissance activity. Digital capabilities allow the CP to develop and retain five distinct overlays:

- Operations 1 Overlay.
- Operations 2 Overlay.
- Fire Support Overlay.
- Enemy Overlay.
- Obstacle Overlay.

Each of these overlays has specified uses during the planning process and subsequent preparation for combat.

OPERATIONS 1 OVERLAY

D-73. The Operations 1 overlay is used to record scheme of maneuver for any given tactical operation. Although simplified to avoid cluttering the automated displays, it is equivalent of the acetate operations overlay. The plan is developed over the terrain database depicted on the B^2C^2 displays. Once the plan has been finalized, the completed automated overlay is distributed digitally to subordinate leaders and fire units prior to the order so they have an opportunity to review the plan and post the overlay to their maps. Operators must be familiar with specific techniques and procedures to efficiently develop and manipulate automated overlays in the tactical Internet.

OPERATIONS 2 OVERLAY

D-74. The Operations 2 overlay has several uses based on where the platoon is in the troop-leading process and the type of mission it is assigned. When the WO is issued, the Operations 2 overlay is used to distribute reconnaissance objectives to digitally-equipped subordinate units during refinement of the tentative plan.

D-75. During offensive operations, the Operations 2 overlay is reserved for maneuver graphics pertaining to the prepared missions. This technique reduces clutter on automated tactical displays by assigning probable or contingency missions to a separate overlay until they are implemented. It may also be used to direct scheme of maneuver changes resulting from enemy use of chemical weapons.

D-76. During defensive operations, the Operations 2 overlay is used for the supported force fire plan. This fire plan aggregates subordinate fire plans into a single automated overlay that is used to verify the synchronization of direct fire weapon systems and ensure the battery commander's intent has been met.

FIRE SUPPORT OVERLAY

D-77. The fire support overlay is used for recording and distributing the task force fire support plan. Input into the fire support officer's fire plan during the planning process is accomplished by the company fire support team (FIST) vehicle through the digital message device (DMD). The fire support officer uses input received from company fire support officers to adjust the fire support plan and distribute a final (approved) indirect fire plan prior to the start of the mission.

D-78. All control measures typically placed on an acetate fire support overlay are included on the automated equivalent. Automated calls for fire are passed to company fire support officers in the TACFIRE message format and can be fed directly to the artillery fire direction center in a matter of seconds. For this reason, it is advantageous for leaders to have the complete indirect fire plan available for use at a moment's notice. Although automation of the call-for-fire speeds the process of requesting fires, fires are still more responsive if they are based upon planned versus opportunity targets.

D-79. Fire support overlays are still a product of top-down fire planning with bottom-up refinement. Fire support overlays can be accessed and changed by any member of that particular net and do not have any connectivity with AFATDS. Therefore, changes to the overlay must be closely controlled and coordinated with the fire support officer at each level. During bottom-up refinement, the fire support officer will coordinate changes and additions according to the battery commander's guidance for fire support.

ENEMY OVERLAY

D-80. The automated enemy overlay is used during both offense and defense for counter-reconnaissance operations. It is also used to distribute and update the situation template.

D-81. Digitally updating leaders on the enemy situation shortens the process and minimizes any potential misunderstanding. It also provides subordinate units with a simplified enemy overlay that is useful in formulating their scheme of maneuver. Superimposing the enemy overlay with the automated overlay (Operations 1 or 2) assists leaders in identifying triggers for changes in movement techniques and formations based on the enemy's probable disposition.

D-82. During counter-reconnaissance operations, the automated enemy overlay is used to confirm or deny the situation template and update the reconnaissance force on changes to the enemy situation. Enemy icons transmitted digitally by the reconnaissance force are automatically posted to the enemy overlay. This allows the S2 to quickly confirm or deny his situation template and postulated enemy course of action by comparing actual locations of enemy icons against the ASAS situation template. Revisions to the initial situation template are prepared and transmitted to subordinate units based on the

S2's analysis. Enemy information reported by voice is manually posted to the enemy overlay and analyzed in a similar manner.

OBSTACLE OVERLAY

D-83. The obstacle overlay is used primarily during defensive operations to distribute the supported force obstacle plan. However, in the offense, the obstacle overlay is used as a supplement to the enemy overlay as a detailed sketch that shows the actual compilation of enemy tactical obstacle(s). Limitations in replicating doctrinally correct obstacle symbology using the automated symbol set requires the task force engineer to use the label function to differentiate between the various obstacles.

COMBAT FUNCTIONS

D-84. During combat operations, the automated battery CP maintains the digital link to the commander and digitally-equipped subordinate units. The CP tracks the location of friendly and enemy icons, monitors digital reporting between the commander and subordinate units, and distributes digital information. Digital information received over digital systems is logged and posted on SITMAPs in the CP identically to combat information gathered from the radio. This technique ensures that the CP has a manual backup and is postured to operate from the map if automated command and control systems fail. It also increases situational awareness among CP personnel by summarizing digital combat information on SITMAPs and charts where it is accessible to all personnel.

D-85. The CP retains the requirement to keep the battery commander, as well as the supported force, apprised of the tactical situation. The CP communicates with the commander using a combination of digital (B^2C^2) and voice reporting. To simplify communications between echelons, the commander must develop and rehearse a situation-specific communications plan. When digitally-equipped subordinate units play a major role in the supported force scheme of maneuver, digital systems are used to track the movement of these units until enemy contact/detection is made. Once contact/detection is established and the initial automated contact or SPOTREP is received and acknowledged, all communications within the unit default to voice. While battery and subordinate units develop the situation, the CP monitors unit movement on digital displays, reviews automated reports, and updates situation displays (SITMAPs and charts). Simultaneously, the CP updates the supported force and adjacent units with this information digitally (B^2C^2) and by voice.

D-86. When an enemy is destroyed, the battery returns to radio listening silence and subordinate units submit automated SITREPs to the CP to update their combat status. Concurrently, the CP personnel prepare and distribute annotated updates to the Operations 1 overlay and enemy overlays based on guidance received from the battery commander. Upon receipt of updated overlays and any necessary implementing instructions, the CP aggregates the combat status of subordinate units and updates combat power charts. This process is repeated every time contact/detection is established with the enemy until the mission or operation is accomplished.

SECTION VIII. COMMAND AND CONTROL OF OPERATIONS

D-87. The digitized battery provides the commander with new challenges and increased capabilities. The near real-time distribution of combat information, up to and including initial contact with the enemy, provides a significant advantage over conventional systems. This section provides techniques to facilitate the use of both voice and digital reporting during the execution of a mission.

SUCCESSION OF COMMAND

D-88. The battery SOP normally governs succession of command. If it is modified based on the mission or personnel turbulence, it is stated in paragraph five of the OPORD. This is also true for the digitally-equipped platoon. Although the digital system will identify if a link is broken and will automatically route messages through an alternate link, this will not be apparent to the unit. The commander will still need to establish techniques for identifying when a key leader is a casualty and for notifying the second in command to take charge. Note that not all platforms (vehicles) will have the same capabilities. There are two methods available:

a. The subordinate assumes the “role”of the leader who has been killed. He logs off as himself and logs on as the leader. The tactical Internet routing matrix will begin to pass data to the platform as if it were the leader's vehicle. However, the leader's vehicle must in fact be dead (off the net) which must be practiced in training, though it will likely not be an issue in combat. When the leader is capable of reassuming his duties, he notifies the subordinate either face-to-face, via voice, or via someone relaying a message; and when the subordinate has logged off as the leader, then the leader may log back on.

b. Time permitting, the subordinate may notify the battery (of his intent to log on as the leader), which can have the information system analysis operators (74Bs) in the System Integration Vehicle (SIV) execute a manual change to the routing matrix. This, however, is time-consuming and is not the preferred method. It would be appropriate if the leader was out of the area of operations, but would be returning later.

COMMUNICATIONS

D-89. The communications capabilities of the digitally-equipped battery are vastly superior to those possessed by conventional units. These communications capabilities, however, are tempered by the co-use of the SINCGARS radio for both digital and voice traffic at the platoon/section/squad level. During precombat and postcombat phases of an operation, the bulk of administrative reporting within the platoon should be in the form of automated SITREPs. This reduces the unit’s electronic warfare signature by exploiting the tactical Internet burst capabilities of automated reporting. Crew members serve as the radio-telephone operators during preparation for combat operations and alert leaders, as necessary, when digital reports are received. The platoon sergeant acts as the platoon net control station.

D-90. Prior to crossing the line of departure during offensive operations, elements configure their tactical displays with the Operations 1 overlay displayed. Once enemy contact is made, the section or platoon in contact initiates a voice contact report to alert the platoon. The platoon in contact transmits the enemy icon digitally to the battery commander with an automated contact report. This technique immediately alerts the platoon that contact with the enemy has been established; the contact report orients the platoon by providing the location and initial strength of the enemy. Once the commander verifies receipt of the automated contact report, tactical reporting on the battery net reverts to FM voice until the mission is completed. As the battery deploys to develop the situation, the XO eavesdrops on the battery net and sends a SPOTREP digitally to the BCT commander and S3 to apprise them of the tactical situation.

D-91. Radio net discipline is crucial during this period because voice transmissions take precedence over digital traffic. Poor net discipline causes digital systems to store reports in a queue until there is a pause on the net of sufficient duration to transmit the entire report digitally. As a matter of SOP, restrict FM voice transmissions to the unit in contact until the commander or XO acknowledges receipt of the initial automated contact report on the platoon net.

MANEUVER CONTROL

D-92. The digitized battery possesses enhanced maneuver control capabilities over its predecessors, which simplifies control of tactical movement and enhances situational awareness. Current POSNAV technology provides leaders with accurate position locations for individual vehicles, which are updated according to settings in the tactical Internet (that is, every 15 minutes or 100 meters of movement). Digital systems can also graphically depict the location of individual vehicles logged onto the platoon net. The commander uses this information to improve the security and survivability of the battery by monitoring the lateral dispersion/depth of battery elements during offensive operations and periods of limited visibility.

D-93. The commander needs to establish how often and by what protocol the situational awareness will be updated. Movement (every 100 meters) can update it, by time (every X minutes), or both. The platoon/section element locations are transmitted over SINCGARS to the platoon leader/section chief (platoon sergeant is the alternate gateway), and the platoon relays these over EPLRS to the battery commander (this is all automatic). Units equipped with BCIS will also send the location of interrogated units over the BCIS. This information will be transferred to the tactical Internet and relayed higher.

D-94. During periods of limited visibility, each platoon/section is assigned a series of way points along a designated axis to maintain lateral dispersion and orientation. Caution, however, must be exercised when moving in formation during limited visibility. Although vehicles have PLGRs to assist in navigation, the range of the drivers' view limits their mobility. Each of these techniques must be integrated into existing SOPs and practiced in order to exploit the advanced navigational and command and control capabilities of the digitally-equipped platoon.

SECTION IX. COMMUNICATIONS

D-95. Communications is the means through which command and control is exercised. Communications take on increased importance in the digitized platoon, as both voice and digital traffic are passed on the same radio net. There must be open lines of communication vertically and horizontally to realize the full command and control capabilities of ADA weapon and sensor systems. Similarly, the battery commander must understand the capabilities, limitations, and vulnerabilities of this communications system.

RADIO NETS

D-96. The digitized battery operates on the same three primary radio nets as its nondigitized counterpart: command net, supported unit net, and early warning net. The command net is used for both voice and B^2C^2 digital traffic. Voice traffic has precedence over digital messages on this net to facilitate timely communication during enemy contact/detection. The cost is that digital communications are stored in a queue in the radio interface unit (RIU) initiating the message until a sufficient pause exists on the net to send the transmission in its entirety. This phenomenon requires strict radio discipline on the command net, particularly during enemy contact/detection, until the unit acknowledges receipt of the digital contact or SPOTREP. This technique ensures that the digital report is received in a timely manner and that the unit is alerted to the precise location of the enemy. Once the report is received and the icon is displayed, the battery commander defaults to voice communications and develops the situation.

DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS

D-97. The configuration of the RIU and the routing matrices imbedded in the B^2C^2 software create unique reporting limitations, which must be addressed by a series of work-arounds. The B^2C^2 communications page has possible user IDs: each user ID has specific reporting capabilities and limitations that correspond to the radio net the user normally uses. This limitation induces artificiality into the reporting process in specific situations such as sending the CP digital report on the supported force net. In most cases, the commander is too busy issuing instructions and developing the situation to report digitally once contact/detection is made. The XO, on the other hand, is normally located at the platoon CP and can report digitally. The routing matrix, however, will not allow the CP to report in this manner. This limitation is addressed by having the XO assume the battery commander's user ID prior to crossing a line of departure or the defend no later than (NLT) time specified in the order. This technique allows the commander to receive all automated reports forwarded by subordinates and enables the XO to forward pertinent reports digitally to the supported force.

D-98. The capability of B^2C^2 equipped systems to digitally request fires using a fire request grid format requires that the commander give specific guidance on how that capability is to be used. It also requires that the supported force fire support officer coordinate and include in the fire support plan, the details of any digital quick-fire links to include address identifiers.

SECTION X. PREPARATION FOR COMBAT

D-99. The digitized battery uses the advanced navigation, information sharing, and communications capabilities during preparation for combat operations. These capabilities enable the battery to improve both efficiency and effectiveness of critical preparatory tasks such as assembly area operations and rehearsal activities. The time leaders traditionally spend performing or supervising these activities can now be devoted to developing, refining, and implementing the air defense plan. The cumulative effect of this process is improved comprehension and synchronization during execution of the plan.

ASSEMBLY AREAS

D-100. The battery occupies an assembly area to prepare for future operations. Preparations typically include reorganization, receipt, and distribution of combat orders; resupply activities; and maintenance of vehicles and equipment. The digitized battery facilitates the compression of the time normally allocated for these activities by integrating digital systems into the planning, preparation, and execution of assembly area operations. Normally, the battery will prepare and transmit a movement route and other pertinent control measures to subordinate units digitally as an operations overlay.

QUARTERING PARTY

D-101. The battery quartering party (for movement into an assembly area) should include a digitally-equipped vehicle to allow the quartering party OIC to communicate digitally with the supported force, the platoon CP, and/or other digitally-equipped elements. Similarly, each subordinate unit quartering party should include at least one digitally-equipped vehicle. This technique allows the quartering party to exploit the position-location, navigation, and automated reporting capabilities inherent in digital command and control systems.

D-102. Prior to beginning movement to the assembly area, digitally-equipped combat vehicles display the automated operations overlay on the tactical display. This overlay typically includes the movement route, way points, specific critical points identifying tentative positions, and PTLs for weapon orientation and observation during movement. Control measures must be few in number and related to quartering party operations to prevent tactical displays from becoming cluttered to the point that they are unusable. Based on the tactical situation, additional control measures such as contact points, coordination points, OPs, and screen lines may be included to enhance control and security. If fire support, obstacle, and enemy overlays are also available, quartering party members should store these in their digital database in the event they are necessary.

D-103. Special care should be taken to ensure that digital communication is possible between the quartering party OIC and representatives from each subordinate unit. When necessary, the OIC passes critical information to the battery commander digitally or by FM voice. Representatives from subordinate units log on the command net prior to initiating movement. This technique facilitates transmission of digital message traffic (reports and overlays) both within the quartering party and between the OIC and the CP. The quartering party annotates changes to the published route on the operations overlay and notifies the CP by digitally forwarding an overlay update.

D-104. An alternative technique is to send the CP with the quartering party to establish command and control while the platoon's main body is moving. If planning time is short, key members of the staff can move with the quartering party. This enables the staff to begin detailed planning immediately upon the arrival in an assembly area. Digital systems are used to prepare and transmit automated overlays (tentative plan), review automated reports, and monitor the progress of the main body. This technique facilitates transitioning to new missions by pre-positioning key members of the staff so planning can occur concurrently with movement of the main body. Upon arrival in an assembly area, the quartering party uses POSNAV systems to navigate to assigned positions and execute the required reconnaissance. Quartering parties from the battery—

- Determine locations for individual vehicles and record the eight-digit grid from the tactical display.
- Identify sectors of search, PTLs, and left/right limits for their units.
- Record this information on their digital operations overlay and send the updated overlay digitally to the battery commander.

Concurrently, CP personnel accomplish the following tasks:

- Determine the location for the CP and record it on the automated display.
- Verify subordinate unit locations and sectors of search to ensure there are no gaps in air defense coverage.
- Ensure necessary routes are cleared.
- Transmit changes/updates to the CP to alert the main body to changes to the route and/or assembly area.

D-105. Although position location devices and digital command and control systems improve the battery's ability to navigate, the commander or subordinate leader must decide if and when guides are required to assist in occupying the assembly area. Normally, the use of guides should be planned for occupations during periods of limited visibility or when the task organization consists of predominantly nondigitized units.

OCCUPATION OF ASSEMBLY AREAS

D-106. The digitized battery begins movement to an assembly area with an updated movement route, specific eight-digit grid coordinates for vehicle locations, and a confirmed defensive scheme for occupation of the assembly area. When possible, a scout UAV or helicopter should fly in advance of the movement to reconnoiter the intended route of movement and confirm the selected assembly area. This enables the unit to transition quickly from road march into the actual occupation of the assembly area while maintaining overall air defense coverage for the main body.

D-107. During the road march, the CP monitors the progress of the unit on tactical displays, reviewing digital reports as required. This technique results in a significant reduction in FM voice communications as information previously transmitted over the radio can now be gathered simply by observing the tactical display. Subordinate leaders track the progress of digitally-equipped units with respect to control measures (SP, checkpoints, RPs) depicted on the automated operations overlay during both movement to and occupation of the assembly area.

D-108. If the unit contacts/detects the enemy during the movement, the initial contact/detection report is transmitted by voice followed immediately by an automated contact report. Upon receipt of the automated report, the battery commander and/or subordinate leaders issue instructions by voice to initiate pertinent battle drills and develop the situation. They use tactical displays to assess the tactical situation and monitor movement of subordinate units with respect to known enemy location(s). Upon request, subordinate units transmit updated enemy locations to the task force and/or CP as either contact or SPOTREPs.

D-109. Occupation of the assembly area is simplified when the platoon leads with digitized subordinate units and positions nondigitized further back in the column. This technique exploits the advanced navigation and position location capabilities of the digital units by allowing nondigitally-equipped units to follow them. As nondigitally-equipped vehicles occupy the assembly area, they position themselves by moving right or left of the base digitized unit. This enables the entire unit to rapidly occupy the designated assembly areas with great accuracy while maintaining unit integrity.

ACTIONS IN ASSEMBLY AREA

D-110. The digitally-equipped battery conducts actions in the assembly area in the same manner as before with a few exceptions. Administrative/logistics actions are carried out according to the SOP. Each digitally-equipped subordinate develops detailed sector sketches and transmits them to the CP on the automated operations overlay. By combining section/squad sector sketches, the platoon CP develops a detailed platoon sketch including both subordinate unit sectors of fire and indirect fire control measures. During this process, however, the staff must exercise caution, selecting only the control measures required to provide security in the assembly area. The updated operations overlay detailing the organization of the assembly area is forwarded digitally to the BCT commander and S3.

PRECOMBAT INSPECTIONS

D-111. The battery commander and subordinate leaders conduct a precombat inspection to determine the battery readiness to execute its assigned mission. During planning for combat operations, precombat inspections typically are informal and focused on particular areas, activities, or units of concern to the battery commander. Due to technical sophistication and the time-consuming nature of setup and

initialization procedures, digitally-equipped units must include digitized systems in their scheduled precombat inspections.

D-112. Informal precombat inspections allow the battery commander and subordinate leaders to verify setup functions that determine the effectiveness of digitized vehicles during combat. Tasks such as inspecting the communications page on command vehicles, reviewing the content and composition of automated overlays (operations, enemy and fire support), and verifying initialization data (grid location and spheroid) on POSNAV devices are specific areas that must be inspected. Other pertinent information such as the status of prefire checks, boresighting, and synchronization can be gathered during precombat inspections by a simple conversation with vehicle crews and key leaders with subordinate units. Topics such as the unit's communications plan before and during combat operations, triggers to shift to voice reporting, and processing of automated calls for fire also provide valuable insight to the unit's combat readiness.

SECTION XI. REHEARSALS

D-113. Rehearsals replicate actions or processes that are fundamental to the success of a tactical scheme of maneuver. Rehearsing key combat actions allows participants to familiarize themselves with the battery commander's intent for automated information exchange as well as ascertain the feasibility and adequacy of automated command and control measures. To be efficient and effective during combat, rehearsals of automated information exchange and command and control techniques must be both comprehensive and realistic. Local SOPs must identify appropriate automated rehearsal techniques and establish advantages of digitization.

LEVELS OF REHEARSALS

D-114. Rehearsals are classified by technique employed and level of participation. Digitization expands the rehearsal process by integrating the role of automated reporting and command and control functions (B^2C^2). Figure D-1 illustrates personnel requirements by rehearsal level.

- Level IV rehearsals are full-scale battery dress rehearsals involving the use of real-time operations over actual or similar terrain. Rehearsals include preparing and sending automated reports and initiating squad battle drills based on information displayed on automated tactical displays. Level IV rehearsals are the most productive type of rehearsals; however, they are also the most resource and time intensive.
- Level III rehearsals are full-dress battery rehearsals of automated reporting and command and control procedures performed on actual vehicles. Level III rehearsals do not involve the movement of vehicles—they are designed simply to exercise the automated reporting process. Exercising the automated reporting process allows the battery commander or subordinate leaders to effectively gauge the feasibility, adequacy, and level of comprehension of the role of digital command and control systems. Level III rehearsals must be planned and executed whenever the designated scheme of maneuver centers on initiating contact and/or direct/indirect fire with digitally-equipped units. Failure to allocate sufficient time to perform this type of rehearsal under these conditions significantly increases the risk of losing synchronization during the battle.
- Level II rehearsals are scaled rehearsals using key leaders mounted in vehicles over similar terrain. Level II rehearsals cover less area and are less resource intensive than Levels III and IV; however, they fail to exercise automated reporting and command and control functions. They focus primarily on specific actions or events within an operation such as actions on contact/detection or an in-stride breach of an obstacle.

- Level I rehearsals are small-scaled rehearsals that do not involve interaction with any type of vehicle or equipment. They typically include techniques such as sand table exercises, rock drills, walk-throughs, or war gaming. Because they do not involve actual interaction with equipment, Level I rehearsals are the least preferred type of rehearsal for digitally-equipped units. If a decision is made to execute Level I rehearsals, the commander must talk through his intent for digital reporting and thoroughly review his communications plan once contact/detection is established. As mentioned earlier, failure to allocate time to rehearse and refine these functions significantly increases the probability that synchronization will be lost during the fight.

Participation	**Level I**	**Level II**	**Level III** (Digital)	**Level IV** (Digital)
Commander	X	X	X	X
XO			X	X
1SG			X	X
Linebacker Plt Ldr	X	X	X	X
Linebacker Plt Sgt	X	X	X	X
Avenger Plt Ldr	X	X	X	X
Avenger Plt Sgt	X	X	X	X
---------- Increasing Time ----------►				

Figure D-1. Personnel Requirements by Rehearsal Type.

CONDUCT OF REHEARSALS

D-115. The single most important action that digitally-equipped units must rehearse is when and under what circumstances digital and voice communications are to be used. When voice and digital message traffic is passed at the same time on the same radio net, the RIU forces digital information into a queue. Digital information remains in the queue until there is a pause on the net of sufficient duration to allow the complete digital message to be passed unencumbered. This phenomenon requires disciplined use of the radio and clearly articulated guidance from the battery commander outlining his intent for automated tactical reporting.

D-116. The battery commander's plan for integrating voice and digital communications during the execution of a mission is developed during the war-gaming process. The result of this war-gaming process is a clear and comprehensive plan outlining the priority of communications by the phase of the operation. Ideally, voice communications are minimized prior to contact/detection of the enemy. Once contact/power is established and the initial automated contact/detection report is received, the platoon switches to voice communications. Specific events such as aerial threat detection, crossing a particular phase line, or establishing contact are suitable triggers for toggling from digital to voice reporting and must be practiced during rehearsals. Similarly, the timing and circumstances preceding a return to digital message traffic must also be rehearsed.

D-117. Leaders at all levels must also be proficient in sending, receiving, and manipulating digital reports during an operation. Integrating these tasks into rehearsals increases a leader's confidence in the equipment and helps identify critical times during an operation when the use of B^2C^2 is neither practical nor beneficial.

D-118. Finally, rehearsals should replicate the same reporting intensity expected during combat. This allows leaders to gain experience in making the mental transition required to apply visual information on the tactical display back to the map and the terrain. This process is a perishable skill that must be rehearsed in advance of combat operations whenever possible. Lack of experience in performing this function will negate the advantage of increased situational awareness made possible by digitization. Table D-1 describes the variable message flow into the tactical Internet.

Table D-1. VMF Message Flow Into Tactical Internet.

NUMBER	MESSAGE	PURPOSE
KO1.50	FREE TEXT	To send free text information not covered by other messages.
KO1.51	FILE TRANSFER	To provide the capability to send and receive tactical computer screen display and files.
KO1.52	UNIT REFERENCE QUERY	To verify, request, or assign a unit reference number or unit name.
KO2.1	CHECK FIRE	To order a check fire or cancel a check fire by target number, by fire unit, and target number, or all targets.
KO2.4	CALL FOR FIRE	To request resources from supporting or adjacent fire support agencies.
KO2.5	SHELL, BOMB, MORTAR REPORT	To report enemy shelling, location of enemy fire units, and transmission of data for crater analysis.
KO2.6	OBSERVER NOTIFICATION	To provide the observer information concerning his request for fire and/or subsequent adjustment.
KO2.14	MESSAGE TO OBSERVER	To transmit fire mission data to an observer.
KO2.15	COORD MEASURES	To define, modify, or delete coordination measures.
KO2.16	END OF MISSION AND SURVEILLANCE	To direct end of mission processing of a fire mission, or to cancel a firing unit or aircraft assignment to an on-going mission during current operations.
KO2.22	SUBSEQUENT ADJUSTMENT	To adjust fall of shot against an area target or for a registration fire mission.
KO2.27	TACTICAL AIR REQUEST	To request immediate or preplanned close air support.
KO2.31	MISSION REQUEST REJECTION	To inform a requester that a planned fire mission(s) or a planned or immediate air mission(s) is rejected.
KO2.32	TACTICAL AIR REQUEST (TAR) ACCEPTANCE	To inform C^2 agencies that a tactical air mission request has been accepted.

Table D-1. VMF Message Flow Into Tactical Internet (continued).

NUMBER	MESSAGE	PURPOSE
KO2.33	TACTICAL AIR REQUEST AIRCREW BRIEFING	To provide aircrews all-essential aircrew briefing information for a close air support mission.
KO2.34	AIRCRAFT ON-STATION	For the pilot or flight leader to notify the control agency that he and his flight have arrived at the prescribed control station.
KO2.35	AIRCRAFT DEPART INITIAL POINT	(For the pilot or flight leader.) To notify the initial point control agency that he and his flight are departing the initial point to complete the assigned air support mission.
KO2.36	AIRCRAFT MISSION UPDATE	To confirm, update, or change an aircraft's assigned mission.
KO2.50	OBSERVER STATUS	(Used by fire support units.) To transmit the status of forward observer, fire support location, or radar location and status, or to transmit data to dedicate a howitzer to target acquisition agency.
KO2.58	AIRBORNE FIRE MISSION	To request resources from supporting Army aviation fire support agencies.
KO3.50.	SHOT AT REPORT	To provide a battle damage assessment from a target engagement.
KO3.51	WEATHER REPORT REQUEST	To distribute a severe weather warning and 12-, 24-, and 48-hour weather forecasts to all units. The weather report is requested by units from the WX personnel (Air Force).
KO4.9	BRIDGE REPORT	To report or confirm the tactical use of bridge(s) to support military operations.
KO4.50	LAND ROUTE REPORT	To report the military use of a land route for combat operations.
KO4.51	RADAR TARGETS AND INTELLIGENCE	To provide situation awareness and early warning, and/or engagement by other systems. This message allows for near real-time transmission of the detected target array for targeting and intelligence information.
KO4.52	SPOT/SALUTE REPORT	To report spot, contact, engagement, and salute reports. This report is submitted by subordinate units to their higher headquarters.
KO4.53	OBSTACLE REPORT	To report obstacle type, location, impact on movement, bypass locations, safe corridors, and enemy activity near the obstacle.
KO4.54	DOCTRINAL/TEMPLATE	To provide commander with enemy templating capability for intelligence situation developments.
KO5.1	POSITION REPORT	To provide own, subordinate, and friendly unit location data.
KO5.51	SITUATION REPORT	To report and define tactical situations and status only. This report is submitted by subordinate units to their higher headquarters.
KO5.52	OVERLAY MESSAGE	To provide a means of sending and receiving overlay information.
KO5. 53	THREAT WARNING MESSAGE	To notify units, commanders, and personnel of an imminent ballistic missile, aircraft, or NBC attack.

Table D-1. VMF Message Flow Into Tactical Internet (continued).

NUMBER	MESSAGE	PURPOSE
KO5.54	FIELD ORDERS	(Standardized information format used by commander and staff.) To issue plans/orders to effect the coordinated execution of an operation. Also used to provide FRAGO or WO.
KO5.55	INFORMATION REQUEST/RESPONSE MESSAGE	To provide commander with request/response capability for information elements.
KO5.56	REDCON/MOPP	To notify subordinates of level of security readiness and mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP).
KO5.57	BASIC WIND REPORT	To transmit wind direction and speed for either the nearest 6 hours or for a period more than 6 hours into the future.
KO5.58	CHEMICAL DOWNWIND MESSAGE	To transmit chemical downwind information. This information is transmitted every 6 hours and contains a forecast of the meteorological data needed for chemical hazard area (CHA) prediction procedure for three consecutive 2-hour periods, for either the nearest 6 hours or for a period more than 6 hours into the future.
KO5.59	EFFECTIVE DOWNWIND REPORT	To transmit the actual effective downwind data needed for prediction of fallout areas resulting from a nuclear burst for either the nearest 6 hours or for a period of more than 6 hours into the future.
KO5.61	NBC 1 REPORT	To transmit an observer's initial report of basic data pertinent to an NBC attack.
KO5.62	NBC 2 REPORT	To transmit evaluated data of an NBC attack resulting from the processing of one or more NBC 1 reports.
KO5.63	NBC 3 REPORT	To transmit immediate warning of predicted contamination and hazard areas following NBC attacks.
KO5.64	NBC 4 REPORT	To transmit NBC monitoring and survey results.
KO5.65	NBC 5 REPORT	To transmit actual NBC contamination areas.
KO5.66	NBC 6 REPORT	To transmit detailed information on biological or chemical attacks.
KO7.1	MEDICAL EVACUATION REQUEST	To request ground or aircraft support to evacuate friendly and/or enemy casualties.
KO7.50	LOGISTICS REPORT	To report individual units or multiple units combat-essential equipment readiness status and degree of supply readiness.
KO7.51	PERSONNEL STATUS	To report individual units or multiple unit daily or periodic personnel strength and status.
KO7.52	CTI/BRIL ACTION MESSAGE	To inform units of materiel and personnel that a force-level commander has directed to be tracked and/or to modify/establish the BRIL.
KO7.53	MINEFIELD LAYING REPORT	To report on friendly minefield laying operations.

Table D-1. VMF Message Flow Into Tactical Internet (continued).

NUMBER	MESSAGE	PURPOSE
KO7.55	EPW/DETAINEE CAPTURE/STATUS REPORT	(This report will be used by the capturing unit.) To inform higher headquarters (info only) and supporting military police of the capture or detainment of EPWs, civilian detainees, civilian internees, or displaced civilian refugees. This message provides accurate and timely information to effect transportation, security, processing, and transfer of these categories of personnel to the custody of the MPs.
KO8.50	CACHE REPORT	To report cache sites. The cache report is used by outstations and the base station.

GLOSSARY

A^2C^2	Army airspace command and control
AA	assembly area
AAR	after action review
ABM	antiballistic missile
ABMOC	air battle management operations center
ABOC	air battle operations center
ACO	airspace control order
AD	air defense
ADA	air defense artillery
ADADO	assistant division air defense officer
ADC	air defense coordination
ADCN	air defense coordination net
ADCOORD	air defense coordinator; air defense coordination
ADO	air defense officer
ADW	air defense warning
AE	antenna equipment
AFATDS	Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System
AGR	Active Guard Reserve
AI	area of interest
A/L	administration/logistics
AM	amplitude modulation
AMDWS	air and missile defense workstation
ANCD	automated net control device
AO	area of operations
AOAP	Army oil analysis program

AR	Army Regulation; Army Reserve
ARNG	Army National Guard.
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
ASAS	all source analysis system
ATWESS	antitank weapons effect simulator system
AVG TTT	Avenger table top trainer
AW	air warning
B^2C^2	brigade and below command and control
BCIS	battlefield combat identification system
BCT	basic combat training
BDAR	battlefield damage assessment and repair
BF	battle fatigue
BLTM	battalion level training model
BM	ballistic missile
BMNT	begin morning nautical twilight
BMO	battery maintenance officer
BOC	battalion operations center
BOS	battlefield operating system
BRIL	basic resources item list
BTOC	brigade tactical operations center
C	conference
C^2	command and control
C^3	command, control, and communications
C^3I	command, control, communications, and intelligence
C^4I	command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence

CA	combined arms
CADE	Corps Air Defense Element
CANA	convalescent antidote for nerve agent (diazepam)
CAS	close air support
CATS	combined arms training strategy
CCIR	commander’s critical information requirements
CCM	counter-countermeasures
CDM	chemical downwind message
CFT	captive flight trainer
CHS	combat health support
CM	cruise missile
COA	course of action
COMSEC	communications security
CP	command post
CPE	collective protection equipment
CPR	cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation
CPX	command post exercise
CS	combat support
CSS	combat service support
CTCP	combat trains command post
CTI	commander tracked item
D	demonstration
DA	Department of the Army
DCA	defensive counterair
DD	Department of Defense
DISCOM	division support command

DMD	digital message device
DODIC	Department of Defense identification code
DP	decision point
DS	direct support
DSA	division support area
DST	decision support template
DTOC	division tactical operations center
DZ	drop zone
E	evaluation
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
ECM	electronic countermeasures
ECS	engagement control station
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
ELRF	eyesafe laser range finder
EPLRS	enhanced position location reporting system
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERF	ECCM remote fill
ET	embedded trainer
EW	early warning
EWBN	early warning broadcast net
EXEVAL	external evaluation
FA	field artillery
FAA	forward assembly area
FAADS	forward area air defense system
FARP	forward arming and refueling point
FASCAM	family of scattered mines

FBCB^2	Force XXI Battle Command, Brigade and Below
FC	fire control
FH	frequency hopping
FHT	field handling trainer
FIST	fire support team
1LT	first lieutenant
1SG	first sergeant
FM	field manual: frequency modulation
FO	forward observer
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FS	fire support; firing section
FSCOORD	fire support coordinator
FSE	fire support element
FST	field sanitation team
FTX	field training exercise
FW	fixed winged
G-2	intelligence staff officer (division or higher staff)
G-3	operations staff officer (division or higher staff)
GBS	ground-based sensor
GM	guided missile
GPS	global positioning system
gren	grenade
HE	high explosive
HIMAD	high- to medium-altitude air defense
HMMWV	high-mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle
HTU	handheld terminal unit

ICOM	integrated COMSEC
ID	identification
IEDK	individual equipment decontamination kit
IEW	intelligence and electronic warfare
IFF	identification, friend or foe
illum	illumination
IMTS	improved moving target simulator
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IR	infrared
IRCM	infrared countermeasures
IVIS	intervehicular information system
JTIDS	joint tactical information distribution system (AN/GSQ-240)
KIA	killed in action
km	kilometer(s)
KPH	kilometer per hour
LBE	load-bearing equipment
LBV	load-bearing vest
LCE	load-carrying equipment
LFX	live fire exercise
LNE	late net entry
LNO	liaison officer
loc	location
LOGPAC	logistics package
LP	listening post
LRF	laser range finder

LRP	logistics release point
LTA	local training area
LZ	landing zone
MACOM	major Army command
MANPADS	man-portable air defense system
MCS	maneuver control system
MCS/P	maneuver control system-phoenix
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, and time available (civil)
MFCS	manual FAAD control system
MI	military intelligence
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
MILES	multiple-integrated laser engagement system
MOPP	mission-oriented protective posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MP	military police
MRA	maneuver rights area
MSB	main support battalion; main support brigade
MSC	Medical Service Corps
MSCS	manual SHORAD control system
MSE	missile support element; multi-subscriber equipment
MSR	main supply route
MTA	maneuver training area
MTF	medical treatment facility

MTOE	modified table of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan
MWO	movement warning order
NAI	named area of interest
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NC	net control
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCS	net control station
NDP	night defensive position
NG	National Guard
NL	no limit
NVG	night vision goggles
O/C	observer controller
OCA	operational control authority
OCOKA	observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
OEG	operational exposure guide
OFS	officer foundation system
OIC	officer in charge
OL	orienting line
OP	observation post
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operation security
OPTEMPO	operating tempo

P	needs practice
PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PE	practical exercise
PIR	priority intelligence requirement
PL	phase line
PLGR	precision lightweight GPS receiver
PLL	prescribed load list
PM	program manager
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POS	position
POSNAV	position navigation
PRR	personnel requirements report
PSG	platoon sergeant
PTL	primary target line
PVNTMED	preventive medicine
QC	quality control
QRF	quick reaction force
R	reinforcing
R&S	reconnaissance and surveillance
RA	Regular Army
RATELO	radiotelephone operator
RC	Reserve Components
RCMAT	radio-controlled miniature aerial target
RCU	remote control unit
rd	round

RIU	radio interface unit
RP	release point
RSOP	reconnaissance, selection, and occupation of position
RT	receiver/transmitter
RTD	return to duty
RTO	radiotelephone operator
S2	Intelligence Officer
S3	Operations and Training Officer
S4	Supply Officer
SA	subject area
SASO	stability and support operations
SC	single channel
SCPE	simplified collective protective equipment
2LT	second lieutenant
SGT	sergeant
SHORAD	short-range air defense
SHTU	simplified handheld terminal unit
SINCGARS	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
SIP	system improvement program
SITMAP	situation map
SITREP	situation report
SM	soldier’s manual
SMCT	soldier’s manual of common tasks
SOA	state of alert
SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure

SOR	state of readiness
SP	start point
SPOTREP	spot report
sqd	squad
SSI	signal standing instructions
STB	super tropical bleach
STC	slew-to-cue
STP	soldier training publication
STPT	Stinger troop proficiency trainer
STRAC	standards in training commission
STRIKWARN	strike warning
STX	situational training exercise
SVML	standard vehicle-mounted launcher
T	trained
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TACFIRE	tactical fire
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
TAI	target area of interest
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TBM	tactical ballistic missile
TCP	traffic control post
TEK	traffic encryption key
TF	task force
THT	tracking head trainer
TM	technical manual; team
TOC	tactical operations center

TOE	table of organization and equipment
TRC	training readiness condition
TSK	transmission security key
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
U	untrained
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UMCP	unit maintenance collection point
USMTF	United States message text format
UTA	unit training area
VACR	visual aircraft recognition
VHSIC	very high-speed integrated circuit
VMF	variable message format
W	west
WBGT	wet bulb globe temperature
WCO	weapons control order
WCS	weapon control status
WIA	wounded in action
WO	warning order
WX	weather
XO	executive officer
Z	zulu time

REFERENCES

SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication.

AR 27-1. Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995 (Change 1, 30 September 1996).

AR 350-1. Army Training. 1 August 1981 (Change 1, August 1983).

AR 385-10. Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988 (Change 1, 29 February 2000).

AR 530-1. Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.

AR 600-15. Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986.

AR 608-99. Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994.

DA Form 581. Request for Issue and Turn-In of Ammunitions. July 1989.

DA Form 1155. Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966.

DA Form 1156. Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966.

DA Form 2028. Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974.

DA Form 2402. Exchange Tag. December 1985.

DA Form 2404. Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet. 1 April 1979.

DA Pamphlet 350-38. Standards in Weapons Training. 3 July 1997.

DA Pamphlet 738-750. Functional Users Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994.

FM 3-3. Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992 (Change 1, 29 September 1994).

FM 3-4. NBC Protection. 29 May 1992 (Change 2, 21 February 1996).

FM 3-5. NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.

FM 3-50. Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990 (Change 1, 11 September 1996).

FM 3-100. Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.

FM 4-30.3. Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000.

FM 6-22.5. Combat Stress. 23 June 2000.

FM 7-7. The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad. 15 March 1985.

FM 7-8. Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.

FM 7-10. The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990 (Change 1, 31 October 2000).

FM 7-20. The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992 (Change 1, 29 December 2000).

FM 8-10-6. Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000.

FM 10-27-4. Organizational Supply for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.

FM 10-450-5. Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Dual-Point Load Rigging Procedures. 30 August 1999.

FM 10-500-1. Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 1991.

FM 19-4. Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.

FM 19-30. Physical Security. 1 March 1979.

FM 19-40. Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.

FM 21-10. Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.

FM 21-11. First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988 (Change 2, 4 December 1991).

FM 21-20. Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992 (Change 1, 1 October 1998).

FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993.

FM 22-51. Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994.

FM 23-9. M16A1 Rifle and M16A2 Rifle Marksmanship. 3 July 1989.

FM 25-4. How to Conduct Training Exercises. 10 September 1984.

FM 25-100. Training the Force. 15 November 1988.

FM 25-101. Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.

FM 34-130. Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994.

FM 44-8. Combined Arms for Air Defense. 1 June 1999.

FM 44-44. Avenger Platoon, Section, and Squad Operations. 3 October 1995.

FM 44-64. SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997.

FM 44-80. Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996.

FM 44-100. US Army Air Defense Operations. 15 June 2000.

FM 71-100-3. Air Assault Division Operations for Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 October 1996.

FM 90-4. Air Assault Operations. 16 March 1987.

FM 90-26. Airborne Operations. 18 December 1990.

FM 100-5. Operations. 14 June 1993.

FM 100-103. Army Airspace Command in a Combat Zone. 7 October 1987.

FM 101-5. Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

DOCUMENTS NEEDED

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication.

AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.

AR 200-1. Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997.

AR 220-1. Unit Status Reporting. 1 September 1997.

AR 350-41. Training in Units. 19 March 1993.

AR 380-5. Department of the Army Information Security Program. 31 October 2000.

AR 385-55. Prevention of Motor Vehicle Accidents. 12 March 1987.

AR 600-8-1. Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994.

ARTEP 44-117-11-Drill. Drills for the Stinger Team. 16 February 1999 (Change 1, 15 October 2000).

ARTEP 44-117-21-Drill. Drills for an Avenger Squad. 15 June 1992.

FM 3-19. NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993.

FM 3-50. Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990 (Change 1, 11 September 1996).

FM 8-10. Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.

FM 8-10-1. The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994.

FM 8-10-7. Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment. 22 April 1993 (Change 1, 26 November 1996).

FM 8-42. Combat Health Support in Stability Operations and Support Operations. 27 October 1997.

FM 8-51. Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

FM 8-55. Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.

FM 8-285. Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.

FM 10-52. Water Supply in Theaters of Operations. 11 July 1990.

FM 10-550. Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment: Rigging Stinger Weapon Systems and Missiles. 29 May 1984 (Change 3, 28 June 1996).

FM 11-32. Combat Net Radio Operations. 15 October 1990.

FM 11-50. Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy and Light). 4 April 1991.

FM 12-6. Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994.

FM 19-4. Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.

FM 20-3. Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.

FM 21-10-1. Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.

FM 21-60. Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.

FM 24-18. Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.

FM 24-19. Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991.

FM 24-33. Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.

FM 24-35. (O) Communications-Electronics Counter-Countermeasures. 26 October 1990.

FM 24-35-1. Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990.

FM 27-2. Your Conduct in Combat Under the Law of War. 23 November 1984.

FM 34-1. Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.

FM 44-43. Bradley Stinger Fighting Vehicle for Platoon/Squad Operations. 3 October 1995.

FM 44-48. Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Sensor Platoon. 21 September 1993.

FM 57-38. Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.

FM 71-100. Division Operations. 28 August 1996.

FM 100-15. Corps Operations. 29 October 1996.

STP 21-1-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994.

STP 21-24-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT), Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992.

STP 44-14S14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 14S, Avenger System Crew Member. 15 August 1996.

STP 44-16S14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 16S, MANPADS Crew Member, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4. 8 January 1996.

TB 750-25. Maintenance of Supplies and Equipment: Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment (TMDE) Calibration and Repair Support Program. 1 March 1997 (Change 1, 12 November 1999).

TM 9-1425-433-10. Operator's Manual for Guided Missile Battery Control Central, Vehicle-Mounted AN/TWQ-1. Avenger Air Defense Weapon System. 10 June 1997 (Change 2, 29 March 2000).

TM 9-1425-429-12. Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Stinger Guided Missile System Consisting of Weapon-Round Basic, Weapon-Round Post, Weapon Round RMP, Trainer Handling Guided Missile Launcher M60, Interrogator Set AN/PPX-3A, AN/PPX-3B Interrogator Set Programmer AN/GSX-1, AN/GSX-1A (Stinger Guided Missile System). 21 April 1992 (Change 1, 30 October 1992).

TM 10-1670-268-20&P. Organizational Maintenance Manual With Repair Parts and Special Tools List: Type V Airdrop Platform. 1 June 1986 (Change 2, 29 July 1991).

TM 11-5820-890-10-1: Operator's Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio, ICOM MANPACK Radio AN/PRC-119A, Short-Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-87A, Short-Range Vehicular Radio With Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-87C, Short-Range Vehicular Radio With Dismount AN/VRC-88A, Short-Range Vehicular Radio With Dismount and Single Radio Mount AN/VRC-88C, Short-Range/Long-Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-89A, Long-Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-90A, Short-Range/Long-Range Vehicular Radio With Dismount AN/VRC-91A, Long-Range/Long-Range Vehicular Radio AN/VRC-92A. 1 September 1992.

TM 11-5985-357-13. Operator's Organizational and Direct Support Maintenance Manual for Antenna Group, OE-254/GRC. 1 February 1991.

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

AR 25-30. The Army Publishing and Printing Program. 21 June 1999.

AR 34-4. Army Standardization Policy. 15 March 1984.

AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.

AR 350-41. Training in Units. 19 March 1993.

AR 385-40. Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.

AR 700-138. Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997.

AR 750-1. Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994 (Change 1, 1 July 1996).

FM 3-01.11. Air Defense Artillery Reference Handbook. 31 October 2000.

FM 5-103. Survivability. 10 June 1985.

FM 24-1. Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990.

FM 25-5. Training for Mobilization and War. 25 January 1985.

FM 34-60. Counterintelligence 3 October 1995.

FM 44-18. Air Defense Artillery Employment, Stinger. 30 September 1981 (Change 1, 17 May 1985).

FM 44-18-1. Stinger Team Operations. 31 December 1984 (Change 1, 17 May 1987).

FM 55-30. Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997 (Change 1, 15 September 1999).

FM 100-103. Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone. 7 October 1987.

FM 101-5-1. Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997.

Other Product Types

ST USAADASCH-44-20. Stinger and Chaparral Identification, Friend or Foe (IFF) Programming Procedures. June 1987.

MTP USER FEEDBACK QUESTIONNAIRE

MTP NUMBER_____DATE_____

MTP TITLE_____

User feedback is an important link in the process of improving training publications. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire is provided for your use in the MTP that applies to your organization. You may answer the questionnaire or simply write your recommendations or suggestions on a piece of paper. Mail either the questionnaire or your written responses to: Commandant, US Army Air Defense Artillery School, ATTN: ATSA-DT-WF, Fort Bliss, TX 79916-3802.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (commander, platoon sergeant, et cetera)?

_____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component? A. AC B. RC

5. Where is your unit?

   A. CONUS C. USAREUR

   B. WESTCOM D. Eighth Army E. Other (specify) _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products? Briefly explain your answer.

   A. Has made training worse. _____

_____

   B. Has made training better. _____

_____

   C. Has had no effect on training. _____

_____

   D. Do not know or have no opinion._____

_____

7. How easy is the document to use compared to other training products? Briefly explain your answer.

   A. More difficult. _____

_____

   B. Easier. _____

_____

   C. About the same. _____

_____

   D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? Why?

   A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

   B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

   C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

   D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

   E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

   F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

   G. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

_____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? Why?

   A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

   B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

   C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

   D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

_____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand? Why?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or have no opinion.

_____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand? Why?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES, STXs, AND FTX:

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this intended purpose? Briefly explain your answer.

A. They do not prepare the unit at all. _____

_____

B. They help, but provide only 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. _____

_____

C. They help, but provide only 21 percent to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements. _____

_____

D. They help, but provide only 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements. _____

_____

E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements. _____

_____

13. Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added or deleted from the MTP? If so, which one(s) and why?

_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. Which part(s)? _____

C. Need more illustrations. Of what? _____

D. Need more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Need more information on leader training. _____

F. Need more information on how to conduct an exercise. _____

G. Need more information on support and resources. _____

H. Need more information on normally attached units. _____

I. Do not interface well with other training products, such as drills._____

J. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. Which part(s)? _____

C. Need more illustrations. Of what? _____

D. Need more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Need more information on leader training. _____

F. Need more information on how to conduct an exercise. _____

G. Need more information on support and resources. _____

H. Need more information on normally attached units. _____

I. Do not interface well with other training products, such as drills._____

J. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

16. How many STXs and FTXs have you trained or participated in personally?

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP:

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5?

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

_____

D. Make the standards less detailed. _____

E. Make the standards more detailed. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

_____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

I. What collective tasks does your unit perform that are not in the MTP? (List on a separate sheet of paper.)

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6?

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

_____

D. Make the standards less detailed. _____

E. Make the standards more detailed. _____

F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

_____

G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

19. Additional comments: _____

ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP
4 JUNE 2001

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0111603

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121159, requirements for ARTEP 44-117-22-MTP.

PIN: 079033-000